

This document constitutes the base prospectus for the purpose of Article 5.4 of Directive 2003/71/EC, as amended, (the "**Prospectus Directive**") of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA in respect of non-equity securities within the meaning of Art. 22 No. 6 (4) of the Commission Regulation (EC) No. 809/2004 of 29 April 2004 as amended ("**Non-Equity Securities**") (the "**Debt Issuance Programme Prospectus**" or the "**Prospectus**").

BERTELSMANN

Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA

(Gütersloh, Federal Republic of Germany)
as Issuer

EUR 4,000,000,000 Debt Issuance Programme (the "**Programme**")

Application has been made to the Luxembourg *Commission de Surveillance du Secteur Financier* (the "**Commission**"), which is the Luxembourg competent authority for the purpose of the Prospectus Directive, for its approval of this Prospectus.

Application has been made to list Notes to be issued under the Programme on the official list of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange and to trade Notes on the regulated market "*Bourse de Luxembourg*". The Luxembourg Stock Exchange's regulated market is a regulated market for the purposes of the Markets in Financial Instruments Directive 2014/65/EU (the "**Regulated Market**"). Notes issued under the Programme may also not be listed at all.

The Issuer has requested the Commission in its capacity as competent authority under the Luxembourg act relating to prospectuses for securities, as amended, (*Loi relative aux prospectus pour valeurs mobilières*) (the "**Luxembourg Law**") which implements the Prospectus Directive into Luxembourg law to provide the competent authorities in the Federal Republic of Germany, the Republic of Austria, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, the Republic of Ireland and the Netherlands with a certificate of approval attesting that the Prospectus has been drawn up in accordance with the Luxembourg Law ("**Notification**"). The Issuer may request the Commission to provide competent authorities in additional Member States within the European Economic Area with a Notification. By approving a prospectus, the CSSF shall give no undertaking as to the economic and financial soundness of the operation or the quality or solvency of the issuer pursuant to Article 7(7) of the Luxembourg Law.

The Notes have not been and will not be registered under the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**") and may not be offered or sold within the United States except pursuant to an exemption from, or in a transaction not subject to, the registration requirements of the Securities Act.

Arranger

Deutsche Bank

Dealers

Barclays

BNP PARIBAS

BofA Merrill Lynch

Citigroup

Commerzbank

Deutsche Bank

J.P. Morgan

**Société Générale Corporate
& Investment Banking**

NatWest Markets

This Prospectus will be published in electronic form on the website of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange (www.bourse.lu) and on the website of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA (<http://www.bertelsmann.com/investor-relations/bonds/debt-issuance-programme/>). This Prospectus succeeds the Prospectus dated 7 April 2017 and is valid for a period of twelve months after its approval.

RESPONSIBILITY STATEMENT

Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA ("**Bertelsmann**" or the "**Issuer**" together with its consolidated group companies, the "**Bertelsmann Group**") with its registered office in Gütersloh, Germany accepts responsibility for the information given in this Prospectus including the documents incorporated by reference herein and for the information which will be contained in the Final Terms (as defined herein).

The Issuer hereby declares that, having taken all reasonable care to ensure that such is the case, the information contained in this Prospectus for which it is responsible is, to the best of its knowledge and belief, in accordance with the facts and contains no omission likely to affect its import.

NOTICE

This Prospectus should be read and understood in conjunction with any supplement hereto and with any other documents incorporated herein by reference. Full information on the Issuer and any tranche of Notes is only available on the basis of the combination of the Prospectus and the relevant final terms (the "**Final Terms**").

The Dealers (as defined herein) have not independently verified the information contained herein. Accordingly, no representation, warranty or undertaking, express or implied, is made and no responsibility or liability is accepted by the Dealers as to the accuracy or completeness of the information contained in this Prospectus or any other information provided by the Issuer in connection with the Programme or the Notes or their distribution. No Dealer accepts any liability in relation to the information contained or incorporated by reference in this Prospectus or any information provided by the Issuer in connection with the Programme or the Notes. The Dealers expressly do not undertake to review the financial condition or affairs of the Issuer during the life of the Programme or to advise any investor in the Notes of any information coming to their attention.

The Issuer has confirmed to the Dealers that this Prospectus contains all information which is necessary to enable investors to make an informed assessment of the assets and liabilities, financial position, profit and losses and prospects of the Issuer and the rights attaching to the Notes which is material in the context of the Programme; that the information contained herein with respect to the Issuer and the Notes is accurate and complete in all material respects and is not misleading; that any opinions and intentions expressed herein are honestly held and based on reasonable assumptions; that there are no other facts with respect to the Issuer or the Notes, the omission of which would make this Prospectus as a whole or any of such information or the expression of any such opinions or intentions misleading; that the Issuer has made all reasonable enquiries to ascertain all facts material for the purposes aforesaid.

The Issuer has undertaken with the Dealers (i) to supplement this Prospectus or publish a new Prospectus in the event of any significant new factor, material mistake or inaccuracy relating to the information included in this Prospectus in respect of Notes issued on the basis of this Prospectus which is capable of affecting the assessment of the Notes and which arises or is noted between the time when this Prospectus has been approved and the final closing of any tranche of Notes offered to the public or, as the case may be, when trading of any tranche of Notes on a regulated market begins, and (ii) where approval of the Commission of any such document is required, to have such document approved by the Commission.

Subject as provided in the applicable Final Terms, the only persons authorised to use this Prospectus in connection with an offer of Notes are the persons named in the applicable Final Terms as the relevant Dealer or the Manager(s), as the case may be.

No person has been authorised to give any information which is not contained in or not consistent with this Prospectus or any other document entered into in relation to the Programme or any information supplied by the Issuer or any other information in the public domain and, if given or made, such information must not be relied upon as having been authorised by the Issuer, the Dealers or any of them.

Neither the Arranger nor any Dealer nor any other person mentioned in this Prospectus, excluding the Issuer, is responsible for the information contained in this Prospectus or any supplement hereto, or any Final Terms or any document incorporated herein by reference, and accordingly, and to the extent permitted by the laws of any relevant jurisdiction, none of these persons accepts any responsibility for the accuracy and completeness of the information contained in any of these documents. This Prospectus is valid for 12 months after its approval and this Prospectus and any supplement hereto as well as any Final Terms reflect the status as of their respective dates of issue. The delivery of this Prospectus or any Final Terms and the offering, sale or delivery of any Notes may not be taken as an implication that the information contained in such documents is accurate and complete subsequent to their respective dates of issue or that there has been no adverse change in the financial situation of the Issuer since such date or

that any other information supplied in connection with the Programme is accurate at any time subsequent to the date on which it is supplied or, if different, the date indicated in the document containing the same.

The distribution of this Prospectus and any Final Terms and the offering, sale and delivery of Notes in certain jurisdictions may be restricted by law. Persons into whose possession this Prospectus or any Final Terms come are required to inform themselves about and observe any such restrictions. For a description of the restrictions applicable in the United States of America, the European Economic Area in general, the United Kingdom and Japan see "*Selling Restrictions*". In particular, the Notes have not been and will not be registered under the Securities Act and are subject to tax law requirements of the United States and may not be offered or sold within the United States except pursuant to an exemption from, or in a transaction not subject to, the registration requirements of the Securities Act.

The Final Terms in respect of any Notes may include a legend entitled "MiFID II Product Governance" which will outline the target market assessment in respect of the Notes and which channels for distribution of the Notes are appropriate. Any person subsequently offering, selling or recommending the Notes (a "**distributor**") should take into consideration the target market assessment; however, a distributor subject to Directive 2014/65/EU (as amended, "**MiFID II**") is responsible for undertaking its own target market assessment in respect of the Notes (by either adopting or refining the target market assessment) and determining appropriate distribution channels.

A determination will be made in relation to each issue about whether, for the purpose of the MiFID Product Governance rules under EU Delegated Directive 2017/593 (the "**MiFID Product Governance Rules**"), any Dealer subscribing for any Notes is a manufacturer in respect of such Notes, but otherwise neither the Arranger nor the Dealers nor any of their respective affiliates will be a manufacturer for the purpose of the MiFID Product Governance Rules.

If the Final Terms in respect of any Notes include a legend entitled "**Prohibition of Sales to EEA Retail Investors**", the Notes are not intended to be offered, sold or otherwise made available to and should not be offered, sold or otherwise made available to any retail investor in the European Economic Area ("**EEA**"). For these purposes, a retail investor means a person who is one (or more) of: (i) a retail client as defined in point (11) of Article 4(1) of MiFID II; or (ii) a customer within the meaning of Directive 2002/92/EC (as amended, the "**Insurance Mediation Directive**"), where that customer would not qualify as a professional client as defined in point (10) of Article 4(1) of MiFID II; or (iii) not a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive. Consequently no key information document required by Regulation (EU) No 1286/2014 (as amended, the "**PRIIPs Regulation**") for offering or selling the Notes or otherwise making them available to retail investors in the EEA has been prepared and therefore offering or selling the Notes or otherwise making them available to any retail investor in the EEA may be unlawful under the PRIIPs Regulation.

The language of the Prospectus is English. Any part of this Prospectus in the German language constitutes a translation. In respect of the issue of any Tranche of Notes under the Programme, the German text of the Terms and Conditions may be controlling and binding if so specified in the relevant Final Terms.

This Prospectus may only be used for the purpose for which it has been published.

Each Dealer and/or each further financial intermediary subsequently reselling or finally placing Notes issued under the Programme is entitled to use the Prospectus as set out in "*Consent to the Use of the Prospectus*" below.

This Prospectus and any Final Terms may not be used for the purpose of an offer or solicitation by anyone in any jurisdiction in which such offer or solicitation is not authorised or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such an offer or solicitation.

This Prospectus and any Final Terms do not constitute an offer or an invitation to subscribe for or purchase any Notes and should not be considered as a recommendation by the Issuer, the Dealers or any of them that any recipient of the Prospectus or any Final Terms should subscribe or purchase any Notes. Each recipient of the Prospectus or any Final Terms shall be taken to have made its own investigation and appraisal of the condition (financial and otherwise) of the Issuer.

In connection with the issue of any Tranche of Notes under the Programme, the Dealer or Dealers (if any) named as Stabilising Manager(s) in the applicable Final Terms (or persons acting on behalf of a Stabilising Manager) may over-allot Notes or effect transactions with a view to supporting the price of the Notes at a level higher than that which might otherwise prevail. However, stabilisation may not necessarily occur. Any stabilisation action may begin at any time after the adequate public disclosure of the terms of the offer of the relevant Tranche of the Notes and, if begun, may cease at any time, but it must end no later than the earlier of 30 days after the Issue Date of the

relevant Tranche of Notes and 60 days after the date of the allotment of the relevant Tranche of Notes. Any stabilisation action or over-allotment must be conducted by the relevant Stabilising Manager(s) (or person(s) acting on behalf of any Stabilising Manager(s)) in accordance with all applicable laws and rules.

Any websites included in the Base Prospectus, except for the website www.bourse.lu in the context of the documents incorporated by reference, are for information purposes only and do not form part of the Base Prospectus.

Interest rates payable under Floating Rate Notes are calculated by reference to (i) EURIBOR (Euro Interbank Offered Rate) which is provided by the European Money Markets Institute (EMMI) or (ii) LIBOR (London Interbank Offered Rate) which is provided by the ICE Benchmark Association (IBA). As at the date of this Prospectus, neither EMMI nor IBA appear on the register of administrators and benchmarks established and maintained by the European Securities and Markets Authority (ESMA) pursuant to Article 36 of the Benchmarks Regulation (Regulation (EU) 2016/1011) ("**BMR**"). As far as the Issuer is aware, the transitional provisions in Article 51 of the BMR apply, such that EMMI and IBA are not currently required to obtain authorisation or registration (or, if located outside the European Union, recognition, endorsement or equivalence).

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This Prospectus contains certain forward-looking statements. A forward-looking statement is a statement that does not relate to historical facts and events. They are based on analyses or forecasts of future results and estimates of amounts not yet determinable or foreseeable. These forward-looking statements are identified by the use of terms and phrases such as "*anticipate*", "*believe*", "*could*", "*estimate*", "*expect*", "*intend*", "*may*", "*plan*", "*predict*", "*project*", "*will*" and similar terms and phrases, including references and assumptions. This applies, in particular, to statements in this Prospectus containing information on future earning capacity, plans and expectations regarding Bertelsmann Group's business and management, its growth and profitability, and general economic and regulatory conditions and other factors that affect it.

Forward-looking statements in this Prospectus are based on current estimates and assumptions that the Issuer makes to the best of its present knowledge. These forward-looking statements are subject to risks, uncertainties and other factors which could cause actual results, including Bertelsmann Group's financial condition and results of operations, to differ materially from and be worse than results that have expressly or implicitly been assumed or described in these forward-looking statements. Bertelsmann Group's business is also subject to a number of risks and uncertainties that could cause a forward-looking statement, estimate or prediction in this Prospectus to become inaccurate. Accordingly, investors are strongly advised to read the following sections of this Prospectus: "*Risk Factors*" and "*General Information about Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA and Bertelsmann Group*". These sections include more detailed descriptions of factors that might have an impact on Bertelsmann Group's business and the markets in which it operates.

In light of these risks, uncertainties and assumptions, future events described in this Prospectus may not occur. In addition, neither the Issuer nor the Dealers assume any obligation, except as required by law, to update any forward-looking statement or to conform these forward-looking statements to actual events or developments.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
Summary	6
Section A Introduction and Warnings.....	6
Section B Issuer.....	7
Section C Securities.....	9
Section D Risks.....	12
Section E Offer of the Securities.....	14
German Translation of the Summary	16
Abschnitt A Einleitung und Warnhinweise	16
Abschnitt B Emittentin.....	17
Abschnitt C Wertpapiere	20
Abschnitt D Risiken.....	23
Abschnitt E Angebot von Wertpapieren.....	25
Risk Factors.....	27
Risk Factors regarding Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA and Bertelsmann Group.....	27
Risk Factors regarding the Notes	32
General Information about Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA and Bertelsmann Group.....	36
1. Introduction.....	36
2. Selected Financial Information	36
3. Capitalisation of Bertelsmann Group.....	38
4. History and Development of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA.....	38
5. Investments	38
6. Business Overview and Principal Markets	38
7. Organisational Structure.....	39
8. Trend Information	40
9. Administrative, Supervisory Boards and Management.....	40
10. Declaration on the German Corporate Governance Code for 2016.....	44
11. Historical Financial Information	44
12. Auditing of Historical Annual Financial Information	44
13. Statutory Auditors.....	44
14. Legal and Arbitration Proceedings	44
15. Share Capital.....	45
16. Material Contracts	45
17. Recent Events	45
18. Significant Change in Bertelsmann's financial or trading position.....	46
19. Rating	46
20. Documents on Display.....	46
Consent to the Use of the Prospectus.....	47
General Description of the Programme	48
Issue Procedures.....	50
Terms and Conditions	52
OPTION I - Terms and Conditions that apply to Notes with fixed interest rates.....	52
OPTION II - Terms and Conditions that apply to Notes with floating interest rates.....	68
Terms and Conditions of the Notes – German Language Version.....	85
OPTION I - Anleihebedingungen für Schuldverschreibungen mit fester Verzinsung	85
OPTION II - Anleihebedingungen für Schuldverschreibungen mit variabler Verzinsung	103
Form of Final Terms (<i>Muster - Endgültige Bedingungen</i>)	122
Use of Proceeds	138
Description of Rules regarding Resolutions of Holders	139
Taxation.....	141
Selling Restrictions	149
General Information.....	152
Documents Incorporated by Reference.....	154
Documents incorporated by Reference	154
Comparative Table of Documents incorporated by Reference.....	154
Availability of Incorporated Documents	155
Names and Addresses	156

SUMMARY

Summaries are made up of disclosure requirements known as "*Elements*". These elements are numbered in Sections A – E (A.1 – E.7).

This summary (the "**Summary**") contains all the Elements required to be included in a summary for this type of Notes and Issuer. Because some Elements are not required to be addressed, there may be gaps in the numbering sequence of the Elements.

Even though an Element may be required to be inserted in the Summary because of the type of Notes and Issuer, it is possible that no relevant information can be given regarding the Element. In this case, a short *description of the Element is included in the Summary with the mention of "not applicable"*.

*[The Summary contains options, characterised by square brackets or typesetting in italics (other than the respective translations of specific legal terms), and placeholders regarding the Notes to be issued under the Programme. The summary of the individual issue of Notes will include the options relevant to this issue of Notes as determined by the applicable Final Terms and will contain the information, which had been left blank, as completed by the applicable Final Terms.]*¹

Element	Section A – Introduction and warnings	
A.1	Warnings	Warning that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ this Summary should be read as an introduction to the Prospectus; ▪ any decision to invest in the Notes should be based on consideration of the Prospectus as a whole by the investor; ▪ where a claim relating to the information contained in the Prospectus is brought before a court, the plaintiff investor might, under the national legislation of the Member State, have to bear the costs of translating the Prospectus, before the legal proceedings are initiated; and ▪ civil liability attaches only to the Issuer which has tabled the Summary including any translation thereof, but only if the Summary is misleading, inaccurate or inconsistent when read together with the other parts of the Prospectus or it does not provide, when read together with the other parts of the Prospectus, key information in order to aid investors when considering whether to invest in the Notes.
A.2	Consent to the use of the Prospectus	<p>[Each Dealer and/or each further financial intermediary subsequently reselling or finally placing the Notes is entitled to use the Prospectus for the subsequent resale or final placement of the Notes during the offer period for the subsequent resale or final placement of the Notes from [●] to [●], provided however, that the Prospectus is still valid in accordance with Article 11 (2) of the Luxembourg Law relating to prospectuses for securities (<i>Loi relative aux prospectus pour valeurs mobilières</i>), as amended, which implements Directive 2003/71/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 4 November 2003 (as amended).</p> <p>The Prospectus may only be delivered to potential investors together with all supplements published before such delivery. Any supplement to the Prospectus is available for viewing in electronic form on the website of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange (www.bourse.lu) and on the website of Bertelsmann</p>

¹ To be deleted for the summary of an individual issue of Notes.

		<p>SE & Co. KGaA (http://www.bertelsmann.com/investor-relations/bonds/debt-issuance-programme/).</p> <p>When using the Prospectus, each Dealer and/or relevant further financial intermediary must make certain that it complies with all applicable laws and regulations in force in the respective jurisdictions.</p> <p>In the event of an offer being made by a Dealer and/or a further financial intermediary the Dealer and/or the further financial intermediary shall provide information to investors on the terms and conditions of the Notes at the time of that offer.] [Not applicable. No consent has been given.]</p>
--	--	--

Element	Section B – Issuer	
B.1	Legal and commercial name	The legal and commercial name of the issuer is Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA (" Bertelsmann ").
B.2	Domicile / Legal form / Legislation / Country of incorporation / Legal Entity Identifier (LEI)	<p>Domicile</p> <p>The seat of Bertelsmann is Gütersloh, Federal Republic of Germany.</p> <p>Legal Form</p> <p>Bertelsmann is a German partnership limited by shares.</p> <p>Country of Incorporation/Legislation</p> <p>Bertelsmann is incorporated and operates under the laws of the Federal Republic of Germany.</p> <p>Legal Entity Identifier (LEI)</p> <p>Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA's Legal Entity Identifier (LEI) is 5299001BUUGXAREGE533.</p>
B.4b	Known trends affecting the Issuer and the industries in which it operates	An overall substantial weakening of economic conditions, changes in technology and/or consumer habits and/or advertising expenditures may adversely affect Bertelsmann's existing businesses.
B.5	Description of the Group and the Issuer's position within the Group	Bertelsmann is the parent company of the Bertelsmann Group. Including Bertelsmann, the Bertelsmann Group consists of 970 companies. The Bertelsmann Group is structured into eight divisions: RTL Group (television), Penguin Random House (books), Gruner + Jahr (magazines), BMG (music), Arvato (services), Bertelsmann Printing Group (printing), Bertelsmann Education Group (education) and Bertelsmann Investments (funds).
B.9	Profit forecast or estimate	Not applicable. No profit forecast or estimate has been included.
B.10	Nature of any qualifications in the audit report on historical financial information	Not applicable. The audit reports with respect to the consolidated financial statements of Bertelsmann for the financial years ended 31 December 2016 and 31 December 2017 do not include any qualifications.
B.12	Selected historical key financial information	
	The following tables set forth certain historical financial information for Bertelsmann as of and	

	for the fiscal years ended 31 December 2017 and 2016 which has been derived from Bertelsmann's audited consolidated financial statements.		
	In EUR millions	2017	2016
	Revenues	17,190	16,950
	EBIT ¹ (earnings before interest and taxes)	1,896	1,799
	Earnings after taxes from continuing operations	1,205	1,136
	Earnings after taxes from discontinued operations	-7	1
	Group profit or loss	1,198	1,137
	Balance sheet total	23,705	23,794
	Equity	9,119	9,895
	Material adverse change in the prospects of the Issuer	There has been no material adverse change in the prospects of Bertelsmann since 31 December 2017.	
	Significant change in the financial and trading position	Not applicable. There has been no significant change in the financial or trading position of Bertelsmann since 31 December 2017.	
B.13	Recent events	On 31 January 2018, Bertelsmann announced its decision that it had begun evaluating various options for the business unit "Customer Relation Management" (" CRM ") of Arvato. These options include partnerships as well as a complete or partial sale of the CRM businesses. The Arvato CRM business in the French-speaking territories is excluded from this strategic process.	
B.14	Please see Element B.5.		
	Statement of dependency upon other entities within the group	Not applicable. Bertelsmann is not dependent upon other entities within the Bertelsmann Group.	
B.15	Principal activities	The principal activities of Bertelsmann comprise entertainment media, business services and education. Entertainment media are free TV (RTL Group), trade book publishing (Penguin Random House), magazine publishing (Gruner + Jahr) and music business (BMG). Business services includes business process outsourcing (BPO) services (Arvato) and printing (Bertelsmann Printing Group). Education means e-learning in the fields of health and technology and online services for higher education (Bertelsmann Education Group) and Bertelsmann Investments which comprise the funds Bertelsmann Digital Media Investments (BDMI), Bertelsmann Asia Investments	

¹ EBIT is not a measure of performance under IFRS. EBIT is determined as earnings before interest and taxes and is reconciled in the consolidated income statement.

		(BAI), Bertelsmann Brasil Investments (BBI) and Bertelsmann India Investments (BII).
B.16	Controlling Persons	<p>Three foundations (Bertelsmann Stiftung, Reinhard Mohn Stiftung and BVG-Stiftung) indirectly hold 80.9 per cent. of Bertelsmann's shares, with the remaining 19.1 per cent. held indirectly by the Mohn family.</p> <p>Bertelsmann Verwaltungsgesellschaft (BVG) controls all voting rights at the General Meeting of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA and Bertelsmann Management SE (personally liable shareholder).</p>
B.17	Credit ratings of the Issuer or its debt securities	<p>Bertelsmann is rated by Moody's^{1,2} as "Baa1" (outlook: stable)³ and by S&P^{4,2} as "BBB+" (outlook: stable)³. Bertelsmann's short-term credit quality rating is "P-2"³ from Moody's and "A-2"³ from S&P.</p> <p>[The Notes have been assigned a rating of [●] by [●].]</p>

Element	Section C – Securities	
C.1	Class and type of the Notes / Security Identification Number	Class The Notes are unsecured.
		[Fixed Rate Notes] The Notes bear interest at a fixed rate throughout the entire term of the Notes.]
		[Floating Rate Notes] The Notes will bear interest at a rate determined [(and as adjusted for the applicable margin)] on the basis of a reference rate appearing on the agreed screen page of a commercial quotation service.]
		ISIN [●] Common Code [●] WKN

¹ Moody's is established in the European Community and is registered under Regulation (EC) No 1060/2009 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 September 2009 on credit rating agencies, as amended (the "**CRA Regulation**"). Obligations rated "Baa" are judged to be medium-grade and subject to moderate credit risk and as such may possess certain speculative characteristics.

² The European Securities and Markets Authority publishes on its website (<http://www.esma.europa.eu/page/Listregistered-and-certified-CRAs>) a list of credit rating agencies registered in accordance with the CRA Regulation. That list is updated within five working days following the adoption of a decision under Article 16, 17 or 20 CRA Regulation. The European Commission shall publish that updated list in the Official Journal of the European Union within 30 days following such update.

³ A credit rating assesses the creditworthiness of an entity and informs an investor therefore about the probability of the entity being able to redeem invested capital. It is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold securities and may be revised or withdrawn by the rating agency at any time.

⁴ S&P is established in the European Community and is registered under the CRA Regulation. An obligation rated "BBB" exhibits adequate protection parameters. However, adverse economic conditions or changing circumstances are more likely to lead to a weakened capacity of the obligor to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.

		[•]
C.2	Currency	The Notes are issued in [•] .
C.5	Restrictions on free transferability	Not applicable. The Notes are freely transferable.
C.8	Rights attached to the Notes (including ranking of the Notes and limitations to those rights)	Negative pledge The Terms and Conditions of the Notes contain a negative pledge provision of the Issuer.
		[Early redemption in the case of fixed rate Notes] The Notes can be redeemed prior to their stated maturity [at the option of the] [Issuer,] [and] [or] [the holders of the Notes (the "Holders")], for taxation reasons, [for reasons of a change of control] and upon the occurrence of an event of default.)]
		[Early redemption in the case of floating rate Notes] The Notes can be redeemed prior to their stated maturity [at the option of the Issuer,] for taxation reasons, [for for reasons of a change of control] and upon the occurrence of an event of default.)]
		[Early Redemption at the option of the [Issuer] [and][or] [the Holders] at specified redemption amount(s)] The Notes can be redeemed at the option of the [Issuer] [and][or] [the Holders] upon giving notice within the specified notice period to [the Holders] [or] [the Issuer][, as the case may be,] on a date or dates specified prior to such stated maturity and at the specified redemption amount(s) together with accrued interest to, but excluding, the relevant redemption date.]
		Early redemption for taxation reasons Early Redemption of the Notes for reasons of taxation will be permitted, if as a result of any change in, or amendment to the laws or regulations (including any amendment to, or change in, an official interpretation or application of such laws or regulations), of the Federal Republic of Germany or any political subdivision or taxing authority thereto or therein affecting taxation or the obligation to pay duties of any kind, the Issuer will become obligated to pay additional amounts on the Notes.
		[Early redemption for reasons of a change of control] Under certain conditions, the Notes provide for the option of the Holders to demand redemption of Notes at their principal amount together with accrued interest to, but excluding, the relevant redemption date in the event of a change of control in respect of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA or its personally liable shareholder(s) and the occurrence of a rating downgrade of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA in respect of that change of control within the change of control period.]
		Early redemption in an event of default (including the cross default) The Notes provide for events of default (including the cross default) entitling Holders to demand immediate redemption of

		Notes at their principal amount together with accrued interest to, the date of repayment.
		<p>Status of the Notes</p> <p>The obligations under the Notes constitute unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of the Issuer ranking <i>pari passu</i> among themselves and <i>pari passu</i> with all other unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of the Issuer except for any obligations preferred by law.</p>
		<p>[Resolutions of Holders</p> <p>In accordance with the German Act on Debt Securities of 2009 (<i>Schuldverschreibungsgesetz</i> – "SchVG") the Notes contain provisions pursuant to which Holders may agree by resolution to amend the Terms and Conditions (with the consent of the Issuer) and to decide upon certain other matters regarding the Notes. Resolutions of Holders properly adopted, either in a meeting of Holders or by vote taken without a meeting in accordance with the Terms and Conditions, are binding upon all Holders. Resolutions providing for material amendments to the Terms and Conditions require a majority of not less than 75 per cent. of the votes cast. Resolutions regarding other amendments are passed by a simple majority of the votes cast.]</p>
C.9	Please see Element C.8.	
	Interest rate	<p>[In the case of fixed rate Notes. [●] per cent. per annum]</p> <p>[In the case of floating rate Notes. [EURIBOR][LIBOR for the specified currency] [[plus][minus] the [applicable] margin [of [●] per cent. per annum for each interest period]. [The minimum interest rate is [●] per cent. per annum] [The maximum interest rate is [●] per cent. per annum]]</p>
	Interest commencement date	[The issue date of the Notes.]
	Interest payment dates	[●]
	Underlying on which interest rate is based	<p>[Not applicable in the case of fixed rate Notes. The interest rate is not based on an underlying.]</p> <p>[In the case of floating rate Notes [EURIBOR][LIBOR for the specified currency]]</p>
	Maturity date including repayment procedures	<p>[In the case of fixed rate Notes [●]]</p> <p>[In the case of floating rate Notes the interest payment date falling in [the redemption month].]</p> <p>Payment of principal in respect of Notes shall be made to the Clearing System or to its order for credit to the accounts of the relevant account holders of the Clearing System.</p>

	Indication of yield	<i>[In the case of fixed rate Notes. [●] per cent. per annum.]</i>
		<i>[Not applicable in the case of floating rate Notes. No yield is calculated.]</i>
	Name of representative of the Holders	<i>[Not applicable. In accordance with the SchVG the Notes provide that the Holders may by majority resolution appoint a representative for all Holders (the "Holders' Representative"). The responsibilities and functions assigned to the Holders' Representative appointed by a resolution are determined by the SchVG and by majority resolutions of the Holders.]</i>
		<i>[[●] has been designated in the Terms and Conditions of the Notes as representative for all Holders (the "Holders' Representative"). The duties, rights and functions of the Holders' Representative are determined by the relevant provisions of the Terms and Conditions.]</i>
C.10	Please see Element C.9.	
	Explanation how the value of the investment is affected in the case the Notes have a derivative component in the interest payment	Not applicable. The interest payment has no derivative component.
C.11	Admission to trading on a regulated market or equivalent market	Regulated market of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange.

Element	Section D – Risks	
D.2	Key information on the key risks that are specific to the Issuer	<p>An overall substantial weakening of economic conditions could severely impact Bertelsmann's business.</p> <p>Changes in technology, in consumer consumption patterns and changing demographics may adversely affect demand for Bertelsmann's entertainment products or increase the cost of producing or distributing products.</p> <p>Technological developments may increase the threat of content piracy and limit Bertelsmann's ability to protect its intellectual property rights.</p> <p>Changes to respective intellectual property regimes could have a material adverse effect on the ability of some of the companies of the Bertelsmann Group to operate their business and on the results of operations.</p> <p>The introduction and increased popularity of alternative technologies for the distribution of news, entertainment and other information and the resulting shift in consumer habits and/or advertising expenditures to other media could adversely affect Bertelsmann's results of operations.</p> <p>Increased competitive pressures may reduce Bertelsmann's revenues or increase Bertelsmann's costs. In particular advertising revenues are critically dependent on the sale of commercial advertising time or space at competitive prices. The</p>

		<p>competition for the leisure and entertainment time of audiences has intensified in recent years, in part due to advances in technology.</p> <p>In case of failure to integrate newly acquired businesses or implement joint ventures on schedule or on the terms and conditions envisaged such businesses and joint ventures may not produce the desired or anticipated results.</p> <p>Bertelsmann may require substantial debt financing and is therefore susceptible to changes in interest rates.</p> <p>Existing insurance coverage may turn out to be inadequate.</p> <p>Fluctuations in exchange rates may negatively affect Bertelsmann's reported results.</p> <p>Counterparty Risk from financial transactions with Financial Institutions and non-Financial Institutions may exist.</p> <p>Bertelsmann is exposed to legal risks.</p>
D.3	<p>Key information on the key risks that are specific to the securities</p>	<p>Notes may not be a suitable investment for all investors</p> <p>Each potential investor in Notes must determine the suitability of that investment in light of its own circumstances.</p> <p>Liquidity Risk</p> <p>There can be no assurance that a liquid secondary market for the Notes will develop or, if it does develop, that it will continue. In an illiquid market, an investor might not be able to sell his Notes at any time at fair market prices. The possibility to sell the Notes might additionally be restricted by country specific reasons.</p> <p>Market Price Risk</p> <p>The Holder of Notes is exposed to the risk of an unfavourable development of market prices of its Notes, which materialises if the Holder sells the Notes prior to the final maturity of such Notes.</p> <p>Risk of Early Redemption</p> <p>A Holder of Notes is exposed to the risk that due to early redemption his investment will have a lower than expected yield. Also, the Holder may only be able to reinvest on less favourable conditions as compared to the original investment.</p> <p>[Currency Risk</p> <p>A Holder of Notes denominated in a foreign currency is exposed to the risk, that changes in currency exchange rates may affect the yield of such Notes.]</p> <p>[Fixed Rate Notes</p> <p>A Holder of Fixed Rate Notes is exposed to the risk that the price of such Notes falls as a result of changes in the market interest rate.]</p> <p>[Floating Rate Notes</p> <p>A Holder of Floating Rate Notes is exposed to the risk of fluctuating interest rate levels and uncertain interest income. Fluctuating interest rate levels make it impossible to determine the profitability of Floating Rate Notes in advance.]</p> <p>[Specific risks linked to [EURIBOR] [LIBOR]</p> <p>Specific risks arise in connection with the [EURIBOR] [LIBOR]</p>

		<p>to which interest rates under the Floating Rate Notes are linked which is deemed to be a "benchmark" (the "Benchmark") and which is the subject of recent national, international and other regulatory guidance and proposals for reform. Some of these reforms are already effective while others are still to be implemented. These reforms may cause the Benchmark (if affected by these reforms) to perform differently than in the past or to be eliminated entirely. [For example, on 27 July 2017, the UK Financial Conduct Authority announced that it will no longer persuade or compel banks to submit rates for the calculation of the LIBOR Benchmark after 2021 (the "FCA Announcement"). The FCA Announcement indicates that the continuation of LIBOR on the current basis cannot and will not be guaranteed after 2021.] The reforms could also have other consequences which cannot be predicted.</p> <p>Although it is uncertain whether or to what extent any change in the administration of or method for determining the [EURIBOR] [LIBOR] could have an effect on the value of the Notes, investors should be aware that they face the risk that any changes to the [EURIBOR] [LIBOR] may have a material adverse effect on the value of and the amount payable under the Notes.]</p> <p>[Resolutions of Holders]</p> <p>Since the Terms and Conditions of the Notes provide for resolutions of Holders, either to be passed in a meeting of Holders or by vote taken without a meeting, a Holder is subject to the risk of being outvoted by a majority resolution of the Holders. As resolutions properly adopted are binding on all Holders, certain rights of such Holder against the Issuer under the Terms and Conditions may be amended or reduced or even cancelled.]</p> <p>[Holders' Representative]</p> <p>Since the Terms and Conditions of the Notes provide for the appointment of a Holders' Representative, it is possible that a Holder may be deprived of its individual right to pursue and enforce its rights under the Terms and Conditions against the Issuer, such right passing to the Holders' Representative who is then responsible to claim and enforce the rights of all Holders.]</p>
--	--	---

Element	Section E – Offer of the Securities	
E.2b	Reasons for the offer and use of proceeds when different from making profit and/or hedging certain risks	<p>[The net proceeds from the issue of the Notes will be used for general corporate purposes.]</p> <p>[•]</p>
E.3	A description of the terms and conditions of the offer	<p>[No public offer is being made or contemplated.]</p> <p>The total amount of the [issue] [offer] is [•].</p> <p>[The offer period commences on [•] and ends on [•].]</p> <p>[The minimum subscription amount is [•].]</p> <p>[The maximum subscription amount is [•].]</p> <p>[The expected price at which the Notes will be offered is [•].]</p> <p>[•]</p>

E.4	Any interest that is material to the issue/offer including conflicting interests	[Not applicable. Any interest that is material to the issue/offer of the Notes including conflicting interests does not exist.] [•]
E.7	Estimated expenses charged to the investor by the issuer or the offeror	[Not applicable. There are no expenses charged to the investor by the Issuer or the offeror.] [•]

GERMAN TRANSLATION OF THE SUMMARY

Zusammenfassungen sind zusammengesetzt aus Offenlegungspflichten, die als "*Punkte*" bekannt sind. Diese Punkte sind in die Abschnitte A – E (A.1 – E.7) nummeriert.

Diese Zusammenfassung (die "**Zusammenfassung**") enthält alle Punkte, die in eine Zusammenfassung für diese Art von Schuldverschreibungen und die Emittenten aufzunehmen sind. Da einige Punkte nicht zu berücksichtigen sind, kann die Nummerierung Lücken aufweisen.

Auch wenn ein Punkt wegen der Art der Schuldverschreibungen und der Emittenten in die Zusammenfassung aufgenommen werden muss, ist es möglich, dass bezüglich dieses Punktes keine relevante Information gegeben werden kann. In einem solchen Fall ist in der Zusammenfassung eine kurze Beschreibung des Punktes unter Bezeichnung als "*nicht anwendbar*" enthalten.

*[Die Zusammenfassung enthält durch eckige Klammern oder Kursivschreibung gekennzeichnete Optionen und Leerstellen bezüglich der Schuldverschreibungen, die unter dem Programm begeben werden können. Die Zusammenfassung der einzelnen Emission der Schuldverschreibungen wird die nur für diese Emission von Schuldverschreibungen relevanten Optionen, wie durch die Endgültigen Bedingungen festgelegt, und die ausgelassenen, durch die Endgültigen Bedingungen vervollständigten Leerstellen beinhalten.]*¹

Punkt	Abschnitt A – Einleitung und Warnhinweise	
A.1	Warnhinweise	<p style="text-align: center;">Warnhinweis, dass</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ die Zusammenfassung als Einleitung zum Prospekt verstanden werden sollte; ▪ sich der Anleger bei jeder Entscheidung in die Schuldverschreibungen zu investieren, auf den Prospekt als Ganzen stützen sollte; ▪ ein Anleger, der wegen der in dem Prospekt enthaltenen Angaben Klage einreichen will, nach den nationalen Rechtsvorschriften der Mitgliedstaaten möglicherweise für die Übersetzung des Prospekts aufkommen muss, bevor das Verfahren eingeleitet werden kann; und ▪ zivilrechtlich nur die Emittentin haftet, die die Zusammenfassung samt etwaiger Übersetzungen vorgelegt und übermittelt hat, und dies auch nur für den Fall, dass die Zusammenfassung verglichen mit den anderen Teilen des Prospekts irreführend, unrichtig oder inkohärent ist oder verglichen mit den anderen Teilen des Prospekts wesentliche Angaben, die in Bezug auf Anlagen in die betreffenden Wertpapiere für die Anleger eine Entscheidungshilfe darstellen, vermissen lassen.
A.2	Zustimmung zur Verwendung des Prospektes	<p>[Jeder Platzeur und/oder jeder weitere Finanzintermediär, der die emittierten Schuldverschreibungen nachfolgend weiter verkauft oder endgültig platziert, ist berechtigt, den Prospekt für den späteren Weiterverkauf oder die endgültige Platzierung der Schuldverschreibungen während der Angebotsperiode für den späteren Weiterverkauf oder die endgültige Platzierung vom [●] bis [●] zu verwenden, vorausgesetzt jedoch, dass der Prospekt in Übereinstimmung mit Artikel 11 Absatz 2 des Luxemburger Wertpapierprospektgesetzes (<i>Loi relative aux prospectus pour valeurs mobilières</i>), wie von Zeit zu Zeit geändert, welches die Richtlinie 2003/71/EG des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom</p>

¹ Für die Zusammenfassung einer einzelnen Emission von Schuldverschreibungen zu löschen.

		<p>4. November 2003 (in der jeweils aktuellen Fassung) umsetzt, noch gültig ist.</p> <p>Der Prospekt darf potentiellen Investoren nur zusammen mit sämtlichen bis zur Übergabe veröffentlichten Nachträgen übergeben werden. Jeder Nachtrag zum Prospekt kann in elektronischer Form auf der Internetseite der Wertpapierbörse Luxemburg (www.bourse.lu) und der Internetseite der Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA (http://www.bertelsmann.de/investor-relations/anleihen/debt-issuance-programme/) eingesehen werden.</p> <p>Bei der Nutzung des Prospektes hat jeder Platzeur und/oder jeweiliger weiterer Finanzintermediär sicherzustellen, dass er alle anwendbaren, in den jeweiligen Jurisdiktionen geltenden Gesetze und Rechtsvorschriften beachtet.</p> <p>Für den Fall, dass ein Platzeur und/oder weiterer Finanzintermediär ein Angebot macht, informiert dieser Platzeur und/oder weiterer Finanzintermediär die Anleger zum Zeitpunkt der Angebotsvorlage über die Angebotsbedingungen der Schuldverschreibungen.] [Nicht anwendbar. Die Zustimmung wurde nicht erteilt.]</p>
--	--	---

Punkt	Abschnitt B – Emittentin	
B.1	Gesetzliche und kommerzielle Bezeichnung	Die gesetzliche und kommerzielle Bezeichnung der Emittentin ist Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA (" Bertelsmann ").
B.2	Sitz / Rechtsform / geltendes Recht / Land der Gründung / Rechtsträgerkennung (LEI)	<p>Sitz</p> <p>Bertelsmann hat seinen Sitz in Gütersloh, Bundesrepublik Deutschland.</p> <p>Rechtsform</p> <p>Bertelsmann ist in der Rechtsform einer deutschen Kommanditgesellschaft auf Aktien gegründet.</p> <p>Land der Gründung/geltendes Recht</p> <p>Bertelsmann ist nach deutschem Recht gegründet.</p> <p>Rechtsträgerkennung (LEI)</p> <p>Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA's Rechtsträgerkennung (LEI) ist 5299001BUUGXAREGE533.</p>
B.4b	Bereits bekannte Trends, die sich auf den Emittenten und die Branchen, in denen er tätig ist, auswirken	Die insgesamt erschwerten wirtschaftlichen Rahmenbedingungen, technologische Veränderungen und/oder Veränderung von Verbrauchergewohnheiten und/oder Verlagerung der Werbebudgets können negativen Einfluss auf bestehende Geschäfte von Bertelsmanns haben.
B.5	Beschreibung der Gruppe und der Stellung des Emittenten innerhalb dieser Gruppe	Bertelsmann ist die Konzernobergesellschaft der Bertelsmann Gruppe. Der Konsolidierungskreis einschließlich Bertelsmann umfasst 970 Unternehmen. Die Bertelsmann Gruppe setzte sich aus den acht Divisionen zusammen: RTL Group (Fernsehen), Penguin Random House (Bücher), Gruner + Jahr (Zeitschriften), BMG (Musik), Arvato (Dienstleistungen), Bertelsmann Printing Group (Druckereien), Bertelsmann Education Group (Bildung) und Bertelsmann Investments (Fondsaktivitäten).
B.9	Gewinnprognosen oder	Nicht anwendbar. Es wurden keine Gewinnprognosen oder

	-schätzungen	Schätzungen aufgenommen.																								
B.10	Art etwaiger Einschränkungen im Bestätigungsvermerk zu den historischen Finanzinformationen	Nicht anwendbar. Der Bestätigungsvermerk für die Konzernabschlüsse von Bertelsmann für die am 31. Dezember 2017 und am 31. Dezember 2016 endenden Geschäftsjahre enthält keine Einschränkungen.																								
B.12	<p>Ausgewählte wesentliche historische Finanzinformationen</p> <p>Die nachstehende Übersicht zeigt ausgewählte historische Finanzinformationen von Bertelsmann zum und für die am 31. Dezember 2017 und 2016 abgelaufenen Geschäftsjahre, die dem geprüften Konzernabschluss von Bertelsmann entnommen sind.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>In Mio. EUR</th> <th>2017</th> <th>2016</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Umsatzerlöse</td> <td>17.190</td> <td>16.950</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EBIT¹ (Ergebnis vor Finanzergebnis und Steuern)</td> <td>1.896</td> <td>1.799</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Ergebnis nach Steuern aus fortgeführten Aktivitäten</td> <td>1.205</td> <td>1.136</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Ergebnis nach Steuern aus nicht fortgeführten Aktivitäten</td> <td>-7</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Konzernergebnis</td> <td>1.198</td> <td>1.137</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bilanzsumme</td> <td>23.705</td> <td>23.794</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Eigenkapital</td> <td>9.119</td> <td>9.895</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		In Mio. EUR	2017	2016	Umsatzerlöse	17.190	16.950	EBIT ¹ (Ergebnis vor Finanzergebnis und Steuern)	1.896	1.799	Ergebnis nach Steuern aus fortgeführten Aktivitäten	1.205	1.136	Ergebnis nach Steuern aus nicht fortgeführten Aktivitäten	-7	1	Konzernergebnis	1.198	1.137	Bilanzsumme	23.705	23.794	Eigenkapital	9.119	9.895
In Mio. EUR	2017	2016																								
Umsatzerlöse	17.190	16.950																								
EBIT ¹ (Ergebnis vor Finanzergebnis und Steuern)	1.896	1.799																								
Ergebnis nach Steuern aus fortgeführten Aktivitäten	1.205	1.136																								
Ergebnis nach Steuern aus nicht fortgeführten Aktivitäten	-7	1																								
Konzernergebnis	1.198	1.137																								
Bilanzsumme	23.705	23.794																								
Eigenkapital	9.119	9.895																								
	Wesentliche Verschlechterung der Aussichten des Emittenten	Der Geschäftsausblick von Bertelsmann hat sich seit dem 31. Dezember 2017 nicht wesentlich negativ verändert.																								
	Signifikante Veränderungen in der Finanz- bzw. Handelsposition	Nicht anwendbar. Seit dem 31. Dezember 2017 hat es keine signifikanten Änderungen der Finanz- bzw. Handelsposition von Bertelsmann gegeben.																								
B.13	Letzte Ereignisse	Am 31. Januar 2018 teilte Bertelsmann mit, dass ab sofort verschiedene Optionen für die Business Unit "Customer Relationship Management" (" CRM ") von Arvato geprüft werde. Diese Optionen schließe Partnerschaften sowie den kompletten oder auch teilweisen Verkauf der CRM-Geschäfte ein. Ausgenommen von dem Prozess ist das Arvato-CRM-Geschäft im französischsprachigen Raum.																								

¹ EBIT ist keine anerkannte Kennzahl gemäß IFRS. Das EBIT ist definiert als das Ergebnis vor Finanzergebnis und Steuern und ist in der Konzern-Gewinn- und Verlustrechnung ermittelt.

B.14	Bitte siehe Element B.5.	
	Angabe zur Abhängigkeit von anderen Unternehmen innerhalb der Gruppe	Nicht anwendbar. Bertelsmann ist nicht von anderen Unternehmen innerhalb der Bertelsmanngruppe abhängig.
B.15	Haupttätigkeiten	Zu Bertelsmanns Unternehmensaktivitäten gehören hauptsächlich Unterhaltungsmedien, Dienstleistungen und Bildung. Zu den Unterhaltungsmedien zählen Fernsehen (RTL Group), Bücher (Penguin Random House), Zeitschriften (Gruner + Jahr) und Musik (BMG). Dienstleistungen sind die Übernahme ausgelagerter Geschäftsprozesse (Arvato) und Druckereien (Bertelsmann Printing Group). Bildung umfasst E-Learning auf dem Gebiet Gesundheit und Technologie und Online-Dienstleistungen für Hochschulen (Bertelsmann Education Group) und Bertelsmann Investments mit den Fonds Bertelsmann Digital Media Investments (BDMI), Bertelsmann Asia Investments (BAI), Bertelsmann Brasil Investments (BBI) und Bertelsmann India Investments (BII), welche weltweit in digitale Geschäfte investieren.
B.16	Beherrschungsverhältnis	Die Kapitalanteile an Bertelsmann werden zu 80,9 % von drei Stiftungen (Bertelsmann Stiftung, Reinhard Mohn Stiftung und BVG-Stiftung) und zu 19,1 % von der Familie Mohn mittelbar gehalten. Alle Stimmrechte in der Hauptversammlung der Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA und der Bertelsmann Management SE (persönlich haftende Gesellschafterin) werden von der Bertelsmann Verwaltungsgesellschaft (BVG) kontrolliert.
B.17	Kreditratings der Emittentin oder ihrer Schuldtitel	Bertelsmann wird von Moody's ^{1,2} mit "Baa1" (Ausblick: stabil) ³ und von S&P ^{4,2} mit "BBB+" (Ausblick: stabil) ³ bewertet. Die Einschätzung zur kurzfristigen Kreditqualität von Bertelsmann wird von Moody's mit "P-2" ³ , von S&P mit "A-2" ³ beurteilt. [Den Schuldverschreibungen wurde das Rating [●] von [●] erteilt.]

¹ Moody's hat seinen Sitz in der Europäischen Gemeinschaft und ist gemäß der Verordnung (EG) Nr. 1060/2009 des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 16. September 2009 über Ratingagenturen, in der jeweils geltenden Fassung (die "**Ratingagentur-Verordnung**") registriert. "Baa"-geratete Verbindlichkeiten sind von mittlerer Qualität. Sie bergen ein moderates Kreditrisiko und weisen mitunter spekulative Elemente auf.

² Die Europäische Wertpapier und Marktaufsichtsbehörde veröffentlicht auf ihrer Webseite (<http://www.esma.europa.eu/page/Listregistered-and-certified-CRAs>) ein Verzeichnis der nach der Ratingagentur-Verordnung registrierten Ratingagenturen. Dieses Verzeichnis wird innerhalb von fünf Werktagen nach Annahme eines Beschlusses gemäß Artikel 16, 17 oder 20 der Ratingagentur-Verordnung aktualisiert. Die Europäische Kommission veröffentlicht das aktualisierte Verzeichnis im Amtsblatt der Europäischen Union innerhalb von 30 Tagen nach der Aktualisierung.

³ Ein Kreditrating ist eine Einschätzung der Kreditwürdigkeit einer Rechtsperson und informiert den Anleger daher über die Wahrscheinlichkeit mit der die Rechtsperson in der Lage ist, angelegtes Kapital zurückzuzahlen. Es ist keine Empfehlung Wertpapiere zu kaufen, zu verkaufen oder zu halten und kann jederzeit durch die Ratingagentur geändert oder zurückgenommen werden

⁴ S&P hat seinen Sitz in der Europäischen Gemeinschaft und ist gemäß der Ratingagentur-Verordnung registriert. Eine Anleihe mit "BBB" zeigt angemessene Schutzparameter. Aber nachteilige wirtschaftliche Bedingungen oder sich verändernde Umstände könnten eher zu einer schwächeren Fähigkeit des Schuldners führen, seine finanziellen Verpflichtungen zu erfüllen.

Punkt	Abschnitt C – Wertpapiere	
C.1	Gattung und Art der Schuldverschreibungen / Wertpapierkennnummer	Gattung Die Schuldverschreibungen sind nicht besichert.
		[Fest verzinsliche Schuldverschreibungen] Die Schuldverschreibungen werden mit einem festen Zinssatz über die gesamte Laufzeit der Schuldverschreibungen verzinst.
		[Variabel verzinsliche Schuldverschreibungen] Die Schuldverschreibungen werden mit einem Zinssatz verzinst [(angepasst um die anwendbare Marge)], der auf der Basis eines Referenzzinssatzes bestimmt wird, der auf der vereinbarten Bildschirmseite eines Kursdienstes angezeigt wird.
		ISIN [•] Common Code [•] WKN [•]
C.2	Währung	Die Schuldverschreibungen sind in [•] begeben.
C.5	Beschränkungen der freien Übertragbarkeit	Nicht anwendbar. Die Schuldverschreibungen sind frei übertragbar.
C.8	Rechte, die mit den Schuldverschreibungen verbunden sind (einschließlich Rang der Schuldverschreibungen und Beschränkungen dieser Rechte)	Negativerklärung Die Bedingungen der Schuldverschreibungen enthalten eine Negativverpflichtung der Emittentin.
		[Vorzeitige Rückzahlung im Fall von festverzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen] Die Schuldverschreibungen sind vor Ablauf ihrer festgelegten Laufzeit [nach Wahl] [der Emittentin,] [und][oder] [der Gläubiger,], aus steuerlichen Gründen, [bei Eintritt eines Kontrollwechsels] und bei Eintritt eines Kündigungsereignisses rückzahlbar.
		[Vorzeitige Rückzahlung im Fall von variabel verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen] Die Schuldverschreibungen sind vor Ablauf ihrer festgelegten Laufzeit [nach Wahl der Emittentin,] aus steuerlichen Gründen, [bei Eintritt eines Kontrollwechsels] und bei Eintritt eines Kündigungsereignisses rückzahlbar.

		<p>[Vorzeitige Rückzahlung nach Wahl der [Emittentin] [und/oder] [der Gläubiger] zu dem(n) festgelegten Rückzahlungsbetrag(beträgen)]</p> <p>Die Schuldverschreibungen sind nach Wahl der [Emittentin] [und/oder] [der Gläubiger] unter Einhaltung der festgelegten Kündigungsfrist durch Kündigung gegenüber [den Gläubigern] [oder] [der Emittentin] rückzahlbar, und zwar zu dem(n) festgelegten Zeitpunkt(en) vor der angegebenen Fälligkeit und zu dem(n) festgelegten Rückzahlungsbetrag(beträgen) nebst etwaigen bis zum jeweiligen Rückzahlungstag (ausschließlich) aufgelaufener Zinsen.]</p>
		<p>Vorzeitige Rückzahlung aus Steuergründen</p> <p>Die vorzeitige Rückzahlung der Schuldverschreibungen aus steuerlichen Gründen ist zulässig, falls als Folge einer Änderung oder Ergänzung der Gesetze oder Vorschriften (einschließlich einer Änderung oder Ergänzung der Anwendung oder der offiziellen Auslegung dieser Gesetze oder Vorschriften) der Bundesrepublik Deutschland oder deren politischen Untergliederungen oder Steuerbehörden, die Emittentin zur Zahlung zusätzlicher Beträge auf die Schuldverschreibungen verpflichtet ist, wie im Einzelnen in den Anleihebedingungen der Schuldverschreibungen dargelegt.</p>
		<p>[Vorzeitige Rückzahlung bei Eintritt eines Kontrollwechsels]</p> <p>Unter bestimmten Bedingungen gewähren die Schuldverschreibungen den Gläubigern das Recht, die Rückzahlung ihrer Schuldverschreibungen zum Nennbetrag nebst etwaigen bis zum jeweiligen Rückzahlungstag (ausschließlich) aufgelaufenen Zinsen zu verlangen, sofern ein Kontrollwechsel bei der Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA oder ihrer persönlich haftenden Gesellschafter(in) eingetreten ist und es innerhalb des Kontrollwechselzeitraums aufgrund dessen zu einer Absenkung des Ratings der Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA kommt.]</p>
		<p>Vorzeitige Rückzahlung bei Eintritt eines Kündigungsereignisses (einschließlich Drittverzug)</p> <p>Die Schuldverschreibungen sehen Kündigungsgründe (einschließlich einer Kündigung im Fall eines Drittverzugs (<i>Cross-Default</i>) vor, die die Gläubiger berechtigen, die unverzügliche Rückzahlung ihrer Schuldverschreibungen zum Nennbetrag nebst etwaigen bis zum jeweiligen Rückzahlungstag aufgelaufener Zinsen zu verlangen.</p>
		<p>Status der Schuldverschreibungen</p> <p>Die Schuldverschreibungen begründen nicht besicherte und nicht nachrangige Verbindlichkeiten der Emittentin, die untereinander und mit allen anderen nicht besicherten und nicht nachrangigen Verbindlichkeiten der Emittentin gleichrangig sind mit Ausnahme von Verbindlichkeiten, die nach geltenden Rechtsvorschriften vorrangig sind.</p>

		<p>[Gläubigerbeschlüsse</p> <p>In Übereinstimmung mit dem Schuldverschreibungsgesetz 2009 ("SchVG") sehen die Schuldverschreibungen vor, dass die Gläubiger durch Beschluss (mit Zustimmung der Emittentin) Änderungen der Anleihebedingungen zustimmen und gewisse sonstige Maßnahmen in Bezug auf die Schuldverschreibungen beschließen. Beschlüsse der Gläubiger können nach Maßgabe der Anleihebedingungen entweder in einer Gläubigerversammlung oder im Wege der Abstimmung ohne Versammlung gefasst werden und sind für alle Gläubiger verbindlich. Beschlüsse der Gläubiger, durch welche der wesentliche Inhalt der Anleihebedingungen geändert wird, bedürfen einer Mehrheit von mindestens 75% der an der Abstimmung teilnehmenden Stimmrechte. Sonstige Beschlüsse bedürfen der einfachen Mehrheit der teilnehmenden Stimmrechte.]</p>
C.9	Bitte siehe Element C.8.	
	Zinssatz	<p>[Im Fall von fest verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen [•] % per annum.]</p> <p>[Im Fall von variabel verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen der [EURIBOR][LIBOR für die festgelegte Währung] [[zuzüglich][abzüglich] der [anwendbaren] Marge [in Höhe von [•]% per annum für jede Zinsperiode]]. [Der Mindestzinssatz beträgt [•]% per annum.] [Der Höchstzinssatz beträgt [•]% per annum.]]</p>
	Verzinsungsbeginn	[Begebungstag der Schuldverschreibungen.]
	Zinszahlungstage	[•]
	Basiswert auf dem der Zinssatz basiert	<p>[Nicht anwendbar im Fall von fest verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen. Der Zinssatz basiert nicht auf einem Basiswert.]</p> <p>[Im Fall von variabel verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen [EURIBOR][LIBOR für die festgelegte Währung]]</p>
	Fälligkeitstag einschließlich Rückzahlungsverfahren	<p>[Im Fall von fest verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen [•]]</p> <p>[Im Fall von variabel verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen am in den [Rückzahlungsmonat] fallenden Zinszahlungstag.]</p> <p>Zahlungen auf Kapital in Bezug auf die Schuldverschreibungen erfolgen an das Clearing System oder dessen Order zur Gutschrift auf den Konten der jeweiligen Kontoinhaber des Clearing Systems.</p>
	Rendite	<p>[Im Fall von fest verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen [•]% per annum.]</p> <p>[Nicht anwendbar im Fall von variabel verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen. Es wird keine Rendite berechnet.]</p>
	Name des Vertreters der Inhaber der	[Nicht anwendbar. In Übereinstimmung mit dem SchVG sehen die Schuldverschreibungen vor, dass die Gläubiger durch

	Schuldverschreibungen	Beschluss einen gemeinsamen Vertreter bestellen können. Die Aufgaben und Befugnisse des durch Beschluss bestellten gemeinsamen Vertreters bestimmen sich nach dem SchVG sowie den Mehrheitsbeschlüssen der Gläubiger.]
		[[•] ist in den Anleihebedingungen der Schuldverschreibungen als gemeinsamer Vertreter der Gläubiger bestellt. Die Aufgaben und Befugnisse des gemeinsamen Vertreters bestimmen sich nach den Anleihebedingungen.]
C.10	Bitte siehe Element C.9.	
	Erläuterung wie der Wert der Anlage beeinflusst wird, falls die Schuldverschreibungen eine derivative Komponente bei der Zinszahlung aufweisen	Nicht anwendbar. Die Zinszahlung weist keine derivative Komponente auf.
C.11	Einführung in einen regulierten Markt oder einem gleichwertigen Markt	Regulierter Markt der Luxemburger Wertpapierbörse.

Punkt	Abschnitt D – Risiken	
D.2	Zentrale Angaben zu den zentralen Risiken, die dem Emittenten eigen sind	<p>Die insgesamt erschwerten wirtschaftlichen Rahmenbedingungen könnten einen erheblichen negativen Einfluss auf die Geschäfte von Bertelsmann haben.</p> <p>Technologische Veränderungen, Änderungen des Kaufverhaltens von Verbrauchern und demographische Veränderungen können die Nachfrage nach Entertainmentprodukten von Bertelsmann nachteilig beeinflussen oder die Produktions- oder Vertriebskosten erhöhen.</p> <p>Technologische Entwicklungen können die Gefahren von Raubkopien erhöhen und damit die Möglichkeiten von Bertelsmann zum Schutz der Rechte am geistigen Eigentum einschränken.</p> <p>Änderungen der rechtlichen Rahmenbedingungen für geistiges Eigentum könnten wesentliche nachteilige Auswirkungen auf die Fähigkeit einiger Bertelsmann Gesellschaften ihre Geschäfte zu führen sowie deren operatives Ergebnis haben.</p> <p>Die Einführung und steigende Popularität alternativer Technologien zur Verbreitung von Nachrichten, Entertainment und anderen Informationen und die daraus resultierende Veränderung von Verbrauchergewohnheiten sowie die Verlagerung der Werbeausgaben zu anderen Medien können die Geschäftsergebnisse von Bertelsmann beeinflussen.</p> <p>Steigender Wettbewerbsdruck kann die Einnahmen von Bertelsmann reduzieren bzw. die Kosten von Bertelsmann erhöhen. Insbesondere Werbeeinnahmen sind entscheidend vom Verkauf von gewerblicher Werbezeit oder Werbefläche zu wettbewerbsfähigen Preisen abhängig. Der Wettbewerb um die freie Zeit für den Konsum von Unterhaltung hat sich intensiviert, insbesondere durch technologischen Fortschritt.</p> <p>Sofern es nicht möglich ist, neu erworbene Unternehmen zu integrieren oder Joint Venture im vorgesehenen Zeitrahmen oder</p>

		<p>den vorgesehenen Bedingungen umzusetzen, kann es sein, dass solche Unternehmen und Joint Venture nicht die gewünschten oder erwarteten Ergebnisse erzielen.</p> <p>Bertelsmann kann erhebliche Fremdmittelaufnahmen benötigen und ist daher anfällig für Zinsschwankungen.</p> <p>Der bestehende Versicherungsschutz kann sich als unzureichend erweisen.</p> <p>Erhebliche Wechselkursschwankungen können sich nachteilig auf das finanzielle Ergebnis von Bertelsmann auswirken.</p> <p>Das Risiko des Ausfalls der anderen Vertragspartei bei Finanztransaktionen mit Finanzinstituten und nicht Finanzinstituten kann bestehen.</p> <p>Bertelsmann ist rechtlichen Risiken ausgesetzt.</p>
D.3	<p>Zentrale Angaben zu den zentralen Risiken, die den Wertpapieren eigen sind</p>	<p>Schuldverschreibungen als nicht für alle Investoren geeignetes Investment</p> <p>Jeder potentielle Anleger in Schuldverschreibungen muss die Geeignetheit dieser Investition unter Berücksichtigung seiner eigenen Lebensverhältnisse einschätzen.</p> <p>Liquiditätsrisiko</p> <p>Es besteht keine Gewissheit, dass ein liquider Sekundärmarkt für Schuldverschreibungen entstehen wird, oder sofern er entsteht, dass er fortbestehen wird. In einem illiquiden Markt könnte es sein, dass ein Anleger seine Schuldverschreibungen nicht jederzeit zu angemessenen Marktpreisen veräußern kann. Die Möglichkeit, Schuldverschreibungen zu veräußern, kann darüber hinaus aus landesspezifischen Gründen eingeschränkt sein.</p> <p>Marktpreisrisiko</p> <p>Der Gläubiger von Schuldverschreibungen ist dem Risiko nachteiliger Entwicklungen der Marktpreise seiner Schuldverschreibungen ausgesetzt, welches sich verwirklichen kann, wenn der Gläubiger seine Schuldverschreibungen vor Endfälligkeit veräußert.</p> <p>Risiko der vorzeitigen Rückzahlung</p> <p>Der Gläubiger von Schuldverschreibungen ist dem Risiko ausgesetzt, dass infolge der vorzeitigen Rückzahlung seine Kapitalanlage eine geringere Rendite als erwartet aufweisen wird. Außerdem besteht die Möglichkeit, dass der Gläubiger der Schuldverschreibungen eine Wiederanlage nur zu schlechteren als den Bedingungen des ursprünglichen Investments tätigen kann.</p> <p>[Währungsrisiko</p> <p>Der Gläubiger von Schuldverschreibungen, die auf eine fremde Währung lauten, ist dem Risiko ausgesetzt, dass Wechselkursschwankungen die Rendite solcher Schuldverschreibungen beeinflussen können.]</p> <p>[Festverzinsliche Schuldverschreibungen</p> <p>Der Gläubiger von festverzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen ist dem Risiko ausgesetzt, dass der Kurs einer solchen Schuldverschreibung infolge von Veränderungen des aktuellen Marktzinssatzes fällt.]</p> <p>[Variabel verzinsliche Schuldverschreibungen</p> <p>Der Gläubiger von variabel verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen ist dem Risiko eines schwankenden Zinsniveaus und ungewisser</p>

		<p>Zinserträge ausgesetzt. Ein schwankendes Zinsniveau macht es unmöglich, die Rendite von variabel verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen im Voraus zu bestimmen.]</p> <p>[Bestimmte Risiken in Bezug auf den [EURIBOR] [LIBOR]</p> <p>Bestimmte Risiken ergeben sich im Zusammenhang mit dem [EURIBOR] [LIBOR], an den die Zinssätze der variabel verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen geknüpft sind, der als "Benchmark" gilt (die "Benchmark") und der Gegenstand aktueller aufsichtsrechtlicher Vorgaben und Reformvorschläge auf nationaler und internationaler Ebene ist. Einige dieser Reformen sind bereits in Kraft getreten, während andere noch umgesetzt werden müssen. Diese Reformen können dazu führen, dass sich die Benchmark (sofern davon betroffen) anders als in der Vergangenheit entwickelt oder ganz abgeschafft wird. [Zum Beispiel hat die britische Financial Conduct Authority am 27. Juli 2017 angekündigt (die "FCA Ankündigung"), dass sie nach 2021 Banken nicht mehr dazu bewegen oder verpflichten will, Daten für die LIBOR Benchmark zu übermitteln. Die FCA Ankündigung deutet darauf hin, dass die Beibehaltung des LIBOR auf der bestehenden Basis nach 2021 nicht garantiert werden kann.] Die Reformen können auch zu anderen Auswirkungen führen, die nicht vorhersehbar sind.</p> <p>Ogleich es ungewiss ist, ob oder inwieweit eine Änderung betreffend die Verwaltung oder das Verfahren zur Ermittlung des [EURIBOR] [LIBOR] Auswirkungen auf den Wert der Schuldverschreibungen haben könnten, sollten Anleger beachten, dass sie dem Risiko ausgesetzt sind, dass Änderungen des [EURIBOR] [LIBOR] sich wesentlich nachteilig auf den Wert und die Zahlungen unter der Schuldverschreibungen auswirken könnten.]</p> <p>[Beschlüsse der Gläubiger</p> <p>Da die Anleihebedingungen der Schuldverschreibungen Beschlüsse der Gläubiger im Rahmen einer Gläubigerversammlung oder durch Abstimmung ohne Versammlung vorsehen, ist ein Gläubiger dem Risiko ausgesetzt, durch einen Mehrheitsbeschluss der Gläubiger überstimmt zu werden. Da ein solcher Mehrheitsbeschluss für alle Gläubiger verbindlich ist, können bestimmte Rechte des Gläubigers gegen die Emittentin aus den Anleihebedingungen geändert, eingeschränkt oder sogar aufgehoben werden.]</p> <p>[Gemeinsamer Vertreter</p> <p>Da die Anleihebedingungen der Schuldverschreibungen die Bestellung eines gemeinsamen Vertreters vorsehen, ist es für einen Gläubiger möglich, dass sein persönliches Recht zur Geltendmachung und Durchsetzung seiner Rechte aus den Anleihebedingungen gegenüber der Emittentin auf den gemeinsamen Vertreter übergeht, der sodann allein verantwortlich ist, die Rechte sämtlicher Gläubiger geltend zu machen und durchzusetzen.]</p>
--	--	---

Punkt	Abschnitt E – Angebot von Wertpapieren	
E.2b	<p>Gründe für das Angebot und Zweckbestimmung der Erlöse, sofern diese nicht in der Gewinnerzielung</p>	<p>[Die Nettoerlöse der Emission der Schuldverschreibungen werden für allgemeine Unternehmenszwecke verwendet.]</p> <p>[•]</p>

	und/oder der Absicherung bestimmter Risiken liegen	
E.3	Beschreibung der Angebotskonditionen	<p>[Ein öffentliches Angebot findet nicht statt und wird nicht in Betracht gezogen.]</p> <p>Die Gesamtsumme [der Emission] [des Angebots] beträgt [•].</p> <p>[Die Angebotsfrist beginnt am [•] und endet am [•].]</p> <p>[Der Mindestzeichnungsbetrag beträgt [•].]</p> <p>[Der Höchstzeichnungsbetrag beträgt [•].]</p> <p>[Der Preis, zu dem die Schuldverschreibungen voraussichtlich angeboten werden, ist [•].]</p> <p>[•]</p>
E.4	Beschreibung aller für die Emission/das Angebot wesentlichen, auch kollidierenden Interessen	<p>[Nicht anwendbar. Es existieren keine Interessen, einschließlich kollidierender, die für die Emission/das Angebot wesentlich sind.]</p> <p>[•]</p>
E.7	Schätzung der Ausgaben, die dem Anleger vom Emittenten oder Anbieter in Rechnung gestellt werden	<p>[Nicht anwendbar. Es gibt keine Aufwendungen, die dem Anleger von der Emittentin oder dem Anbieter in Rechnung gestellt werden.]</p> <p>[•]</p>

RISK FACTORS

The following is a disclosure of risk factors that may affect the ability of Bertelsmann to fulfil its respective obligations under the Notes and that are material to the Notes issued under the Programme in order to assess the market risk associated with these Notes. Prospective investors should consider these risk factors before deciding to purchase Notes issued under the Programme.

Prospective investors should consider all information provided in this Prospectus and consult with their own professional advisers (including their financial, accounting, legal and tax advisers) if they consider it necessary. In addition, investors should be aware that the risks described may combine and thus intensify one another.

RISK FACTORS REGARDING BERTELSMANN SE & CO. KGAA AND BERTELSMANN GROUP

Bertelsmann's business, financial condition or results of operations could suffer adverse material effects due to any of the following risks. This could have an adverse effect on the market price of the Notes, and the Issuer may ultimately not be able to meet its obligations under the Notes. While all the risks considered material are described below, these are not the only risks Bertelsmann faces. Additional risks not known by Bertelsmann or not presently considered material might also impair Bertelsmann's business operations.

An overall substantial weakening of economic conditions could severely impact Bertelsmann's business.

Advertising expenditure and consumer spending are heavily correlated to consumer demand, which in turn is strongly affected by the trends of gross domestic product ("GDP") and unemployment rate. The principal risks that the divisions face in a downturn are as follows.

The business of the RTL Group critically depends on the sale of advertising space, in particular television and radio advertising space. Advertising revenues in the markets of the RTL Group have been materially adversely affected by recent economic and market conditions, and any deterioration of such conditions can cause the revenues and profits of the RTL Group to decline significantly. In addition, TV broadcasters may also cut expenditure on programming generated by the TV production subsidiary Fremantle Media. At the same time, the RTL Group has substantial commitments to acquire programmes in the future the amount and the terms of which the RTL Group may not be able to renegotiate in response to a decline in advertising revenues, which could lead to lower operating margins as well as over-accumulation of programme inventory.

For Penguin Random House, an economic crisis may cause declining consumer spending. Additionally, due to the shift to online orders and ebooks there is an increased risk of losing major customers in a crisis, especially bookstore retailers as a result of insolvencies.

Gruner + Jahr is exposed to advertising revenue and consumer spending. Both factors are negatively affected in a downturn.

The Bertelsmann Printing Group as B2B service provider suffers from an overall declining advertising expenditure and consumer spending. There could be unused capacity at their replication operations which require high utilisation to break even. There could also be unused capacity for the printing business. Pricing pressure created by overcapacity could negatively impact earnings and margins.

Generally, unfavourable economic developments are affecting Bertelsmann in the form of increased customer default risk due to bankruptcy, as credit insurers have been significantly reducing credit limits. Furthermore, as a consequence of the above described risks Bertelsmann may encounter difficulties in its refinancing or may only be able to refinance itself at unfavourable rates.

Changes in technology, in consumer consumption patterns and changing demographics may adversely affect demand for Bertelsmann's entertainment products or increase the cost of producing or distributing products.

Bertelsmann Group's media and entertainment businesses depend significantly on their ability to acquire, develop, adopt and exploit new technologies to distinguish their products and services from those of Bertelsmann's competitors. In addition, new technologies affect the demand for Bertelsmann Group's products and the time and manner in which consumers acquire and view some of its products. Arvato, for example, as a manufacturer of physical storage media faces the risks posed by the substitution of CDs and DVDs by other formats like download or streaming services. This may necessitate restructuring

measures which may be costly. Bertelsmann may be required to invest significant resources to further adapt to the changing competitive environment. In case of the RTL Group, new streaming competitors like Netflix and Amazon may negatively affect the audience share of RTL TV. Additionally, changing demographics in its core markets may result in a decrease of the target age group and the RTL Group may be unable to reposition its leading channels to be attractive to an older audience. Even if RTL Group is successful in doing so, its advertising clients may determine that an older audience does not have the same commercial relevance and purchase less advertising space.

Technological developments may increase the threat of content piracy and limit Bertelsmann's ability to protect its intellectual property rights.

Bertelsmann's products and services are largely comprised of intellectual property content delivered through a variety of media, including television, journals, newspapers, books, ebooks and online, including the internet. Bertelsmann relies on trademark, copyright, patent and other intellectual property laws to establish and protect its proprietary rights in these products and services. However, Bertelsmann's proprietary rights may be challenged, limited, invalidated or circumvented. Despite trademark and copyright protection and similar intellectual property protection laws, third parties may be able to copy, infringe or otherwise profit from its proprietary rights without authorisation.

Bertelsmann Group seeks to limit the threat of content piracy; however, policing unauthorised use of the Bertelsmann Group's products and services and related intellectual property is often difficult and the steps taken by Bertelsmann may not in every case prevent the infringement by unauthorised third parties. Developments in technology, including digital copying, file compressing and the growing penetration of broad-band internet connections, increase the threat of content piracy by making it easier to duplicate and widely distribute pirated material. Bertelsmann Group has taken, and will continue to take, a variety of actions to combat piracy, both individually and together with industry associations. There can be no assurance that Bertelsmann Group's efforts to enforce its rights and protect its intellectual property will be successful in preventing content piracy. Content piracy presents a threat to Bertelsmann Group's revenues from products and services based on intellectual property.

Changes to respective intellectual property regimes could have a material adverse effect on the ability of some of the companies of the Bertelsmann Group to operate their business and on the results of operations.

Some companies of the Bertelsmann Group, in particular the RTL Group and Penguin Random House, are dependent on the development and use of intellectual property in order to grow its content business. As such, they are vulnerable to changes in the laws, rules and regulations relating to intellectual property in the jurisdictions in which they operate, which could affect their ability to obtain new intellectual property rights over Bertelsmann's content, as well as their ability to use or enforce their existing intellectual property rights. Such changes could therefore have a material adverse effect on their ability to operate their business and could have a material adverse effect on their business, financial condition or results of operations.

On 9 December 2015, the European Commission published as part of the Digital Single Market Strategy its action plan to modernise EU copyright rules and audiovisual media services. Proposals of the EU Commission were presented in September 2016.

This review of the EU copyright framework may threaten some of the fundamental principles of the business of the Bertelsmann Group such as limits to the exclusive rights, territorial exclusivity for audiovisual content and copyright contract law, which could in turn have a material adverse effect on its business, financial condition or results of operations. Furthermore, any significant changes to the law affecting the licensing of content for internet distribution could lead to loss of some revenue associated with delivering exclusive or other content on the internet and have a material adverse effect on the business, financial condition or results of operations.

The European Parliament and Council of the European Union have agreed on and adopted the new General Data Protection Regulation (revising the current Data Protection Directive) in spring 2016. The new Regulation will then enter in full force on 25 May 2018. On 10 January 2017, the EU Commission released its proposal for a new regulation on privacy and electronic communications. This regulation will replace the current eprivacy directive. This new eprivacy regulation is currently being discussed in Council. The European Parliament has adopted its negotiation position for the upcoming Trilogue. Trilogue discussions are not expected to start before summer 2018. If the European Parliament position prevails in the legislative process, this legislation would be likely to have a material adverse effect on the Issuer's business, financial condition or results of operations. However, it is uncertain that any final legislation as adopted or implemented will mirror the European Parliament's position.

The introduction and increased popularity of alternative technologies for the distribution of news, entertainment and other information and the resulting shift in consumer habits and/or advertising expenditures to other media could adversely affect Bertelsmann's results of operations.

Bertelsmann's corporate division Gruner + Jahr derives a substantial portion of its revenues from advertising in magazines. Distribution of news, entertainment and other information via the internet has become increasingly popular over the past several years, and viewing news, entertainment and other content on a personal or tablet computer, smart phone or other device has become increasingly popular as well. Accordingly, advertisers have started to partly shift advertising budgets from traditional print media to online media. Gruner + Jahr has taken various steps to diversify its advertising vehicles, including relaunching certain websites and expanding its existing online content. However, Gruner + Jahr's strategies for achieving sustained revenue growth may not be sufficient to offset revenue losses resulting from a continued shift in advertising over the long term from print to other media. In addition, Gruner + Jahr has identified the risk that income in the distribution market (amendment of the German Federal Data Protection Act) and in the advertisement market (possible advertising restrictions in the automotive, food and print advertisement sectors) may be threatened at both national and European level. An increasing spread of digital end devices which is resulting in a decline in printed media could lead to declining circulations with a negative impact on earnings. There are further risks associated with rising material prices – in particular for paper – that cannot be passed on to customers.

The ongoing digitisation is resulting in an increasing fragmentation of RTL Group's markets as audiences will have more choice (for example through online platforms) and, at the same time, the market-entry barriers are being lowered. The possible risks of this for RTL Group are decreasing audience shares and, ultimately, lower advertising revenues. These changes may have negative effects on the advertising revenues of the RTL Group and/or require substantial investments in new programming or distribution channels to attract audiences. In addition, a more fragmented digital environment may affect the relevance of the RTL Group brand to viewers and advertisers which may in turn affect the ability of the RTL Group to sell advertising space at adequate prices and thereby cause a decrease of advertising revenues. This could negatively affect operating results.

Increased competitive pressures may reduce Bertelsmann's revenues or increase Bertelsmann's costs. In particular advertising revenues are critically dependent on the sale of commercial advertising time or space at competitive prices. The competition for the leisure and entertainment time of audiences has intensified in recent years, in part due to advances in technology.

Bertelsmann Group faces substantial competition in each of its businesses from alternative providers of the products and services it offers and from other forms of entertainment. Bertelsmann's businesses compete with each other and all other sources of news, information and entertainment, including broadcast television, movies, live events, radio broadcasts, home video products, print media and the internet. Technological advancements, such as video on demand, new video formats and streaming capabilities and downloading via the internet, have increased the number of media and entertainment choices available to consumers and intensified the challenges posed by audience fragmentation. The increasing number of choices available to audiences could negatively impact not only consumer demand for Bertelsmann's products and services, but also advertisers' willingness to purchase advertising space from Bertelsmann's businesses. If Bertelsmann Group does not respond appropriately to further increases in the leisure and entertainment choices available to consumers, it could have an adverse effect on the Issuer's competitive position and revenues. Bertelsmann also must compete to obtain human resources, programming and other resources required in operating its businesses. In particular:

- RTL Group's television stations compete for viewers with other broadcast, cable and satellite services as well as with streaming services, home video products and internet usage, e.g. Youtube;
- RTL Group's television stations compete for the sale of advertising time with other broadcast, cable and satellite services, as well as newspapers, magazines and the internet. The operating results of the RTL Group are dependent on the importance of television as an advertising medium. In the highly competitive advertising market, factors like the development of audience market shares of the broadcasters of the RTL Group and the public funding available to some of the competitors may impair the ability of the RTL Group to increase or maintain the current level of advertising sales or pricing;
- RTL Group is in increasing competition for attractive and popular entertainment, sports and other content, the acquisition of creative talent and popular entertainers, access to content from third party suppliers such as Hollywood studios and subject to changing audience taste. Failures in these areas may affect its ability to expand and retain the audience of the RTL Group, increase the programme costs and reduce the advertising revenues of the RTL Group;

- Some of RTL Group's publicly owned and funded competitors are subject to limitations regarding the times at which they are permitted to broadcast advertising. A loosening of these restrictions may further increase competition for advertising revenues and cause a decrease of prices for advertising space;
- Penguin Random House competes with other publishers for established authors;
- Penguin Random House's book business faces increased customer concentration through Amazon;
- Gruner + Jahr faces competition from other publishing houses, as well as from other media, in particular the internet;
- The economic environment of Be Printers is characterised by shrinking markets and overcapacities. Risks can arise from a continuing market concentration leading to tougher price competition and lower margins;
- Much of the advertising is sold to clients or media agencies that enjoy significant bargaining power by virtue of the volumes they purchase. Any increase in the client's bargaining power could impair the ability of the various companies of the Bertelsmann Group to increase or maintain the current level of advertising revenues.

Competition in each of these areas may divert consumers from Bertelsmann's products, or to other products or other forms of entertainment, which could reduce Bertelsmann Group's revenue or increase its marketing costs. In addition, competition for the acquisition of resources can increase the cost of producing products and services.

Customer risks, in particular the greater dependence on a few major customers in structural terms, are the most significant risks for Be Printers. There are also risks from the market environment, which is characterised by shrinking markets and overcapacity. Risks can arise from a continuing market concentration leading to tougher price competition and lower margins.

In case of failure to integrate newly acquired businesses or implement joint ventures on schedule or on the terms and conditions envisaged such businesses and joint ventures may not produce the desired or anticipated results

While Bertelsmann and its subsidiaries pursue selected acquisition and joint venture opportunities, there can be no assurance that it will be possible to identify suitable acquisition targets or joint venture partners in the future, or that it will be possible to finance such transactions or ventures on acceptable terms. Further, there can be no assurances that any acquisitions or joint ventures which have been made or which might be entered into in the future will be integrated or implemented successfully or will achieve the desired or expected benefits and financial objectives. In evaluating potential acquisition or co-operation opportunities, certain assumptions regarding the future combined results of the existing and acquired operations or the envisaged co-operation will be made. In certain transactions, the acquisition analysis includes assumptions regarding the consolidation of operations and improved operating cost structures for the combined operations. There can be no assurance that such synergies or benefits will be achieved on the assumed time schedule or in the assumed amount, if at all. Failures or delays in integrating acquisitions or implementing joint ventures could have a material adverse effect on Bertelsmann's business, results of operations and financial condition. Moreover, even in cases in which such transactions or ventures are completed on schedule and according to plan, the synergies actually resulting from an acquisition or the benefits actually derived from a cooperation can ultimately differ materially from Bertelsmann's estimates or expectations, which could have a material adverse effect on Bertelsmann's business, results of operations and financial condition.

Although the merger between Penguin and Random House is completed, there are still risks arising from the merger of the two companies. As with any merger of this size, the creation of the larger company has increased the scale of the business risk, but has not significantly altered the nature of the business risks. The increase in the digital portion of the business creates challenges related to pricing and customer margin.

Bertelsmann may require substantial debt financing and is therefore susceptible to changes in interest rates.

Bertelsmann requires a wide range of financing in order to finance the operations of its businesses. A significant increase in interest rates, substantial delays in payments as well as other events can increase the demands on Bertelsmann's liquidity and net working capital. The interest expense from borrowing is influenced by market-based fluctuations in interest rates. Increases in interest rates can cause the interest expense to increase.

Bertelsmann attempts to limit some of the risks that arise from changes in interest rates by means of hedging transactions. The maturity structure of interest-bearing debt is controlled at two levels, first by selecting appropriate fixed interest-rate periods of the original financial liabilities affecting liquidity, then by using interest-rate derivatives consisting solely of interest-rate swaps. However, there is a risk that these interest-rate hedging transactions will not fully protect Bertelsmann and its subsidiaries from fluctuations in interest rates or, conversely, will be unnecessary expenses as a result of favourable movements in interest rates. The assumptions and decisions Bertelsmann makes with regard to the future movement of interest rates and the degree to which Bertelsmann undertakes risk avoidance or tolerates risk therefore have a significant effect on the success of the hedging strategy, which if unsuccessful, would have an adverse effect on the business, financial condition and results of operations.

Existing insurance coverage may turn out to be inadequate

The Issuer seeks to cover foreseeable risks through insurance coverage. Such insurance coverage, however, may not fully cover the risks to which the Issuer is exposed. For certain risks, adequate insurance coverage may not be available on the market or may not be available at reasonable conditions. Consequently, any harm resulting from the materialisation of these risks could result in significant capital expenditures and expenses as well as liabilities, thereby harming the Issuer's business and operating results.

Fluctuations in exchange rates may negatively affect Bertelsmann's reported results.

Bertelsmann's financial statements are expressed in euro and are, therefore, subject to movements in exchange rates on the translation of the financial information of businesses whose operational currencies are other than the euro. These so called translation risks arising are not hedged. The United States are Bertelsmann's most important foreign market and, accordingly, significant fluctuations in U.S. dollar/euro exchange rates can significantly affect the Issuer's reported results from year to year.

On-balance-sheet and forecast transactions exposed to foreign currency fluctuation risks are to some extent hedged by currency derivatives (currency swaps, futures and forwards). Firm commitments made in foreign currency are only partly hedged at the time the commitment is made, with the hedged amount increasing over time. There is a risk that these exchange-rate hedging transactions will not fully protect the Issuer and its subsidiaries from fluctuations in exchange rates or, conversely, will be unnecessary expenses as a result of favourable movements in exchange rates. The assumptions and decisions Bertelsmann makes with regard to the future movement of exchange rates and the degree to which Bertelsmann undertakes risk avoidance or tolerates risk therefore have a significant effect on the success of the hedging strategy, which if unsuccessful, would have an adverse effect on Bertelsmann's business, financial condition and results of operations.

Counterparty Risk from financial transactions with Financial Institutions and non-Financial Institutions may exist

The Issuer continuously invests money at financial and non-financial institutions and enters into derivative transactions with financial institutions. In those financial transactions counterparties may not be able to fulfill their obligations towards the Issuer, e.g. return investments, pay interest or settle derivative contracts. Although the Issuer has implemented a counterparty risk management system and a limit system in order to reduce the counterparty risk and the financial impact resulting from the realisation of a counterparty risk, the realisation of a counterparty risk and the occurrence of a material adverse financial impact resulting therefrom cannot finally be excluded.

Bertelsmann is exposed to legal risks

Companies of the Bertelsmann Group are, and may in the future be, involved in legal, administrative and arbitration proceedings. Such proceedings could involve substantial claims for damages or could involve the payment of fines, damages or other payments.

In November 2008, RTL II filed legal actions against IP Deutschland, a wholly owned subsidiary of RTL Group, and Seven One Media ("**SOM**") as a result of the 2007 proceedings of the German Federal Cartel Office against the discount scheme agreements ("**share deals**") offered by IP Deutschland and SOM. RTL II's claim is currently limited to access to information on the basis of which the claimants want to prove that they suffered damages from these discount schemes. The court of first instance in Düsseldorf decided to order an expert report. Similar proceedings of other smaller broadcasters initiated in different courts were unsuccessful or have been withdrawn.

In June 2016, the main competitors of Fun Radio alleged that a host of the morning show had influenced Fun Radio's audience ratings by encouraging his listeners to give favorable treatment to Fun Radio in the Médiamétrie surveys. In response to these allegations, Médiamétrie called a special committee, which ultimately decided to remove Fun Radio from Médiamétrie's overall survey published in July 2016. Following a legal procedure initiated by Fun Radio, Médiamétrie was required to reinstate Fun Radio in the ratings surveys as from September 2016 but, since then, decided to lower Fun Radio's audience results, arguing a possible "halo effect". Thereafter, Fun Radio initiated a procedure to challenge the scientific reliability of the Médiamétrie calculation. In December 2016, the main competitors of Fun Radio also filed a claim for damages claiming unfair competition.

Foreign direct investments in the People's Republic of China are subject to a number of regulatory restrictions. In order to satisfy local requirements, some of Bertelsmann's activities in China are owned by trust structures. Agreements have been signed with these trust structures to secure Bertelsmann's rights. These types of arrangements (known as "**VIE**" structures) are standard market practice for investments in China. However, these structures are rarely the subject of legal disputes in China, which means that there is a certain risk that it will not be possible to safeguard VIE structures through the courts particularly if the People's Republic changes its policies toward investments by foreigners (particularly in respect of VIE structures) or if courts and authorities change their case law or administrative practice. In 2015 the "PRC Foreign Investment Law" was revised by the Chinese Ministry of Economic Affairs and is being discussed politically. The current draft stipulates that foreign investments in China shall be regulated via a "negative list" which will count the limited number of possible investments and those that are prohibited in particular industries and will also include a ban on VIE structures. In the past, however, such harsh measures have only been reported in exceptional cases. By contrast, observers are anticipating solutions that will only have a minor impact on the Chinese economy. This affects companies within Fremantle Me-dia, BMG, Arvato and the Bertelsmann Education Group as well as investments by Bertelsmann Asia Investments (BAI).

The realisation of any of these risks could have a material adverse effect on the business, financial condition and results of operations of the Bertelsmann Group.

RISK FACTORS REGARDING THE NOTES

Notes may not be a suitable Investment for all Investors

Each potential investor in Notes must determine the suitability of that investment in light of its own circumstances. In particular, each potential investor should:

- (i) have sufficient knowledge and experience to make a meaningful evaluation of the relevant Notes, the merits and risks of investing in the relevant Notes and the information contained or incorporated by reference in this Prospectus or any applicable supplement;
- (ii) have access to, and knowledge of, appropriate analytical tools to evaluate, in the context of its particular financial situation and the investment(s) it is considering, an investment in the Notes and the impact the Notes will have on its overall investment portfolio;
- (iii) have sufficient financial resources and liquidity to bear all of the risks of an investment in the relevant Notes, including where the currency for principal or interest payments is different from the potential investor's currency;
- (iv) understand thoroughly the terms of the relevant Notes and be familiar with the behaviour of any relevant indices and financial markets; and
- (v) be able to evaluate (either alone or with the help of a financial adviser) possible scenarios for economic, interest rate and other factors that may affect its investment and its ability to bear the applicable risks.

Liquidity Risk

Application has been made to the Luxembourg Stock Exchange for Notes issued under this Prospectus to be admitted to trading on the Regulated Market of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange and to be listed on the official list of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange. In addition, the Programme provides that Notes may not be listed at all. Regardless of whether the Notes are listed or not, there is a risk that no liquid secondary market for the Notes will develop or, if it does develop, that it will not continue. The fact that the Notes may be listed does not necessarily lead to greater liquidity as compared to unlisted Notes. If Notes are not listed on any exchange, pricing information for such Notes may, however, be more difficult to obtain which may affect the liquidity of the Notes adversely. In an illiquid market, an investor is subject to the risk that he will not be able to sell his Notes at any time at fair market prices. The possibility to sell the Notes might additionally be restricted by country specific reasons.

Market Price Risk

The development of market prices of the Notes depends on various factors, such as changes of market interest rate levels, the policies of central banks, overall economic developments, inflation rates or the lack of or excess demand for the relevant type of Note. The Holders of Notes are therefore exposed to the risk of an unfavourable development of market prices of their Notes which materialise if the Holders sell the Notes prior to the final maturity of such Notes. If a Holder of Notes decides to hold the Notes until final maturity, the Notes will be redeemed at the amount set out in the relevant Final Terms.

Risk of Early Redemption

The applicable Final Terms will indicate whether an Issuer may have the right to call the Notes prior to maturity (optional call right) on one or several dates determined beforehand or whether the Notes will be subject to early redemption upon the occurrence of an event specified in the applicable Final Terms (early redemption event). In addition, the Issuer will always have the right to redeem the Notes if the Issuer is required to pay additional amounts (gross-up payments) on the Notes for reasons of taxation as set out in the Terms and Conditions. If the Issuer redeems the Notes prior to maturity or the Notes are subject to early redemption due to an early redemption event, a Holder of such Notes is exposed to the risk that due to such early redemption his investment will have a lower than expected yield. The Issuer can be expected to exercise his optional call right if the yield on comparable Notes in the capital market has fallen which means that the investor may only be able to reinvest the redemption proceeds in comparable Notes with a lower yield. On the other hand, the Issuer can be expected not to exercise his optional call right if the yield on comparable Notes in the capital market has increased. In this event an investor will not be able to reinvest the redemption proceeds in comparable Notes with a higher yield. It should be noted, however, that the Issuer may exercise any optional call right irrespective of market interest rates on a call date.

Currency Risk

A Holder of Notes denominated in a foreign currency (i.e. a currency other than euro) is particularly exposed to the risk of changes in currency exchange rates which may affect the yield of such Notes. Changes in currency exchange rates result from various factors such as macro-economic factors, speculative transactions and interventions by central banks and governments.

A change in the value of any foreign currency against the euro, for example, will result in a corresponding change in the euro value of Notes denominated in a currency other than euro and a corresponding change in the EUR value of interest and principal payments made in a currency other than euro in accordance with the terms of such Notes. If the underlying exchange rate falls and the value of the euro correspondingly rises, the price of the Notes and the value of interest and principal payments made thereunder expressed in euro falls.

In addition, government and monetary authorities may impose (as some have done in the past) exchange controls that could adversely affect an applicable currency exchange rate. As a result, investors may receive less interest or principal than expected, or no interest or principal.

Fixed Rate Notes

A Holder of Fixed Rate Notes is particularly exposed to the risk that the price of such Notes falls as a result of changes in the market interest rate. While the nominal interest rate of a Fixed Rate Note as specified in the applicable Final Terms is fixed during the life of such Notes, the current interest rate on the capital market ("**market interest rate**") typically changes on a daily basis. As the market interest rate changes, the price of Fixed Rate Notes also changes, but in the opposite direction. If the market interest rate increases, the price of Fixed Rate Notes typically falls, until the yield of such Notes is approximately

equal to the market interest rate of comparable issues. If the market interest rate falls, the price of Fixed Rate Notes typically increases, until the yield of such Notes is approximately equal to the market interest rate of comparable issues. If the Holder of Fixed Rate Notes holds such Notes until maturity, changes in the market interest rate are without relevance to such Holder as the Notes will be redeemed at a specified redemption amount, usually the principal amount of such Notes.

Floating Rate Notes

A Holder of Floating Rate Notes is particularly exposed to the risk of fluctuating interest rate levels and uncertain interest income. Fluctuating interest rate levels make it impossible to determine the profitability of Floating Rate Notes in advance.

Floating Rate Notes may be structured to include caps or floors, or any combination of those features. In such case, their market value may be more volatile than the market value for Floating Rate Notes that do not include these features. The effect of a cap is that the amount of interest will never rise above and beyond the predetermined cap, so that the Holder will not be able to benefit from any actual favourable development beyond the cap. The yield could therefore be considerably lower than that of similar Floating Rate Notes without a cap.

Neither the current nor the historical value of the relevant floating rate should be taken as an indication of the future development of such floating rate during the term of any Notes.

Specific risks linked to EURIBOR or LIBOR

The interest rates of Floating Rate Notes are linked to reference rates such as the Euro Interbank Offered Rate ("**EURIBOR**") or the London Interbank Offered Rate ("**LIBOR**") which are deemed to be "benchmarks" (each a "**Benchmark**" and together, the "**Benchmarks**") and which are the subject of recent national, international and other regulatory guidance and proposals for reform. Some of these reforms are already effective while others are still to be implemented.

Key international proposals for reform of Benchmarks include (i) IOSCO's Principles for Oil Price Reporting Agencies (October 2012) and Principles for Financial Benchmarks (July 2013), (ii) ESMA-EBA's Principles for the benchmark-setting process (June 2013), and (iii) the Benchmark Regulation EU 2016/1011 of 8 June 2016 on indices used as benchmarks in financial instruments and financial contracts or to measure the performance of investment funds (the "**Benchmark Regulation**"). In addition to the aforementioned reforms, there are numerous other proposals, initiatives and investigations which may impact Benchmarks.

Following the implementation of such potential reforms, the manner of administration of Benchmarks may change, with the result that they perform differently than in the past, or Benchmarks could be eliminated entirely, or become otherwise unavailable, or there could be consequences which cannot be predicted. Any changes to a Benchmark as a result of the Benchmark Regulation or other initiatives could have a material adverse effect on the costs of obtaining exposure to a Benchmark or the costs and risks of administering or otherwise participating in the setting of a Benchmark and complying with any such regulations or requirements. Such factors may have the effect of discouraging market participants from continuing to administer or participate in certain Benchmarks, trigger changes in the rules or methodologies used in certain Benchmarks or lead to the disappearance of certain Benchmarks. For example, on 27 July 2017, the UK Financial Conduct Authority announced that it will no longer persuade or compel banks to submit rates for the calculation of the LIBOR Benchmark after 2021 (the "**FCA Announcement**"). The FCA Announcement indicates that the continuation of LIBOR on the current basis cannot and will not be guaranteed after 2021. If a Benchmark were to be discontinued or otherwise unavailable, the rate of interest for Floating Rate Notes which is linked to such Benchmark might be determined for the relevant interest period by fall-back provisions as set out in the Terms and Conditions of such Notes, which ultimately could result in the same reference rate of that Benchmark being applied for the determination of the relevant rates of interest until maturity of the Floating Rate Notes, effectively turning the floating rate of interest into a fixed rate of interest. In that case, a Holder would no longer participate in any favourable movements of market interest rates, including central banks' key interest rates, that would have been reflected in the relevant reference rate if the Benchmark would not have been discontinued or otherwise been unavailable, and payments of interest under the Floating Rate Notes would be lower than they would have been had the Benchmark not been discontinued or otherwise been unavailable.

Although it is uncertain whether or to what extent any of the above-mentioned changes and/or any further changes in the administration or method for determining a Benchmark could have an effect on the value of

any Notes whose interest is linked to the relevant Benchmark, investors should be aware that they face the risk that any changes to the relevant Benchmark may have a material adverse effect on the value or the liquidity of, and the amounts payable under Notes whose rate of interest is linked to a Benchmark.

Resolutions of Holders

If the Terms and Conditions of the Notes provide for meetings of Holders or the taking of votes without a meeting, a Holder is subject to the risk of being outvoted by a majority resolution of the Holders. As such majority resolution is binding on all Holders, certain rights of such Holder against the Issuer under the Terms and Conditions may be amended or reduced or even cancelled.

Holdings' Representative

If the Terms and Conditions of the Notes provide for the appointment of a Holdings' Representative, either in the Terms and Conditions or by a majority resolution of the Holders, it is possible that a Holder may be deprived of its individual right to pursue and enforce its rights under the Terms and Conditions against the Issuer, such right passing to the Holdings' Representative who is then exclusively responsible to claim and enforce the rights of all the Holders.

GENERAL INFORMATION ABOUT BERTELSMANN SE & CO. KGAA AND BERTELSMANN GROUP

1. Introduction

Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA (both the legal and commercial name of the Issuer) ("**Bertelsmann**", the "**Issuer**" or the "**Corporation**") is the parent company of the Bertelsmann group of companies (the "**Bertelsmann Group**").

According to § 2 of its articles of association (*Satzung*), the corporate purpose of the Issuer is to manage, as holding company, a group of companies which are active, in particular, in the following industry sectors:

- Manufacture, sale of products as well as the administration and exploitation of rights in the fields of television, music and film as well as radio and other forms of electronic or digital individual and mass communication, in particular, the manufacture and sale of television and radio contributions and programs, television and cinema movies, music contributions and programs of all kinds; dissemination of television and radio programs and other electronic or digital communications offerings as well as respective program segments as television and radio organiser and as provider of electronic or digital communications services of all kinds;
- Publishing and sale of books of all kinds (including audiovisual, electronic and digital issues, independent of the technical sales channel), in particular, the operation of book publication and trading companies and related companies, both trade publisher as well as companies for the sale of commercial and specialised information for commercial and private consumers;
- Publishing and sale of newspapers, magazines and other printed products of all kinds (including electronic and digital issues, independent of the technical sales channel);
- Performance of services of all kinds for commercial and private consumers, namely in the fields of media, communication, outsourcing and education as well as the business activities related thereto, including the manufacture and the sale of printing, electronic technical products, sound, data and image storage media of all kinds as well as the administration and exploitation of rights of all kinds (with and without copyright or other intellectual property rights).

The Issuer can also transact business itself in the above designated fields, in particular individual business transactions. It shall be entitled to undertake all actions and measures which are related to the company objects or which are appropriate directly or indirectly to serve such, also for preceding or succeeding market levels. The same shall apply also for financing transactions and other legal transactions and measures which concern the Issuer as a holding company or which are in the interest of the companies managed by it.

The Issuer can incorporate, acquire and participate as shareholder in other companies, in particular, in such which have respective company objects which cover either entirely or partially the company objects designated above. For the purpose of the investment of financial resources, the Issuer is entitled to participate as shareholder in companies of any kind. It can change companies structurally of which it participates as a shareholder, consolidate them under common management or restrict itself to their administration. The Issuer can establish both domestic and foreign branches.

2. Selected Financial Information

Bertelsmann recorded positive business performance in 2017, achieving revenue growth and increases in operating EBITDA and Group profit. This development was accompanied by further strategic progress with Bertelsmann's transformation into a faster-growing, more digital, more international and diversified Group. Group revenues rose to EUR 17.2 billion (previous year: EUR 17.0 billion). The growth was generated in particular by the TV, music, services and education businesses. Operating EBITDA from continuing operations of EUR 2,636 million in the financial year 2017 was above the high level of the previous year of EUR 2,568 million, despite start-up losses for digital and new businesses. RTL Group, BMG and Bertelsmann Education Group were mainly responsible for the improved earnings. The EBITDA margin improved from 15.2 per cent. in the previous year to 15.3 per cent. Group profit increased from EUR 1,137 million to EUR 1,198 million. Economic investments during the reporting period increased to EUR 1.8 billion (previous year: EUR 1.3 billion), in particular as a result of the increase of the shareholding in Penguin Random House.

EBIT and operating EBITDA are financial measures presented in this Prospectus which are not recognised financial measures under IFRS ("**Non-GAAP Financial Measures**") and may therefore not be considered as an alternative to the financial measures defined in the accounting standards in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles ("**GAAP Financial Measures**"). The Issuer has provided these Non-GAAP Financial Measures and other information in this Prospectus because it believes they provide investors with additional information to assess the economic situation of the Bertelsmann Group business activities. The definition of the Non-GAAP Financial Measures may vary from the definition of identically named Non-GAAP financial measures used by other companies. The Non-GAAP Financial Measures used by the Issuer should not be considered as an alternative to net income/loss after income taxes, revenues or any other measures derived in accordance with IFRS as measures of operating performance. These Non-GAAP Financial Measures have limitations as analytical tools and should not be considered in isolation or as substitutes for analysis of results as reported under IFRS.

EBIT is determined as earnings before interest and taxes. The Issuer presents EBIT as an additional indicator to assess its operating result excluding its financial result and income taxes. The EBIT is reconciled in the consolidated income statement, which is incorporated by reference into this prospectus.

Operating EBITDA is determined as earnings before interest, tax, depreciation, amortisation and impairment losses and is adjusted for special items. The Issuer presents operating EBITDA as an additional indicator to assess its operating performance excluding special items serve to determine a sustainable operating result that could be repeated under normal economic circumstances, which is not affected by special factors or structural distortions. These special items primarily include impairment losses and reversals of impairment losses, remeasurements, restructuring expenses and/or results from disposals of investments. This means that operating EBITDA is a meaningful performance indicator for the Bertelsmann Group.

Reconciliation to Operating EBITDA (Continuing Operations)

in € millions	2017	2016
EBIT from continuing operations	1,896	1,799
Special items		
– Impairment on goodwill and other intangible assets with indefinite useful life as well as gains from business combinations	30	–
– Adjustment to carrying amounts on assets held for sale	4	14
– Impairment on other financial assets	20	22
– Impairment losses and reversals on investments accounted for using the equity method	50	4
– Results from disposals of investments	(182)	(41)
– Fair value remeasurement of investments	(15)	(12)
– Restructuring and other special items	176	152
Amortization/depreciation, impairment losses and reversals of intangible assets and property, plant and equipment	691	632
Adjustments on amortization/depreciation, impairment losses and reversals of intangible assets and property, plant and equipment included in special items	(34)	(2)
Operating EBITDA from continuing operations	2,636	2,568

As of 31 December 2017, the Bertelsmann Group had 119,089 employees worldwide.

The following table presents selected financial information of the Issuer, which was extracted from the audited consolidated financial statements of the Issuer for the years ended 31 December 2017 and 2016:

in EUR millions	2017	2016
Revenues	17,190	16,950
EBIT (earnings before interest and taxes)	1,896	1,799
Earnings after taxes from continuing operations	1,205	1,136
Earnings after taxes from discontinued operations	(7)	1

Group profit or loss	1,198	1,137
Balance sheet total	23,705	23,794
Equity	9,119	9,895

3. Capitalisation of Bertelsmann Group

The following table presents selected financial information of the Issuer, which was extracted from the audited consolidated financial statements of the Issuer for the year ended 31 December 2017 and 2016 and sets forth the consolidated capitalisation of the Bertelsmann Group as at the dates indicated below:

in EUR millions	12/31/2017	12/31/2016
Balance sheet total	23,705	23,794
Thereof:		
Non-current Financial debt	4,251	3,763
Current Financial debt	668	235

4. History and Development of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA

Bertelsmann is incorporated and operates under German law. It is registered in the commercial register of the local court (*Amtsgericht*) of Gütersloh under HRB 9194 and has its corporate seat in Gütersloh, Federal Republic of Germany, and its office address is Carl-Bertelsmann-Straße 270, 33311 Gütersloh, Federal Republic of Germany, telephone number: +49 52 41 80 0. Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA's Legal Entity Identifier (LEI) is 5299001BUUGXAREGE533.

Bertelsmann was founded as a regional publishing house under the name C. Bertelsmann Verlag oHG in Gütersloh in 1835 which was first transformed into a stock corporation in 1971 and thereafter into a partnership limited by shares (*Kommanditgesellschaft auf Aktien - KGaA*).

5. Investments

There have been no material investments since 31 December 2017.

6. Business Overview and Principal Markets

Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA is a capital-market-oriented but unlisted partnership limited by shares. As a Group holding company, it exercises central corporate functions such as the specification and development of the Group's strategy, capital allocation, financing and management development. Internal corporate management and reporting follow the Group's organisational structure, which consists of the operating divisions and Corporate.

Bertelsmann operates in the core business fields of media, services and education in around 50 countries worldwide. The geographic core markets are Western Europe – in particular, Germany, France and the United Kingdom – and the United States. In addition, Bertelsmann is strengthening its involvement in growth markets such as China, India and Brazil. The Bertelsmann divisions are RTL Group (television), Penguin Random House (books), Gruner + Jahr (magazines), BMG (music), Arvato (services), Bertelsmann Printing Group (printing), Bertelsmann Education Group (education) and Bertelsmann Investments (funds).

RTL Group

RTL Group is, based on revenue, one of the leading television groups in the broadcasting, content and digital business with interests in 56 television channels, 31 radio stations and content production throughout the world. The television portfolio of RTL Group includes RTL Television in Germany, M6 in France and the RTL channels in the Netherlands, Belgium, Luxembourg, Croatia and Hungary, as well as investments in Atresmedia in Spain. Fremantle Media is one of the largest international creators, producers and distributors of a wide range of formats outside the United States. Combining the catch-up TV services of its broadcasters, the multichannel networks BroadbandTV, StyleHaul and Divimove and

Fremantle Media's 280 YouTube channels, RTL Group has become the leading European media company based on online video views. Furthermore, RTL Group owns SpotX, a programmatic video advertising platform. The publicly traded RTL Group S.A. is listed on the German MDAX index.

Penguin Random House

Penguin Random House is, based on revenue, the world's largest trade book publisher, with more than 250 imprints across five continents. Its book brands include storied imprints such as Doubleday, Viking and Alfred A. Knopf (United States), Ebury, Hamish Hamilton and Jonathan Cape (United Kingdom), Plaza & Janés and Alfaguara (Spain) and Sudamericana (Argentina), as well as the international imprint Dorling Kindersley. Germany's Verlagsgruppe Random House, which includes illustrious publishing houses such as Goldmann and Heyne, is not part of Penguin Random House from a legal point of view, but is under the same corporate management and is part of the Penguin Random House division. Each year Penguin Random House publishes over 15,000 new titles and sells nearly 600 million print books, e-books and audio books.

Gruner + Jahr

Gruner + Jahr is one of Europe's leading premium magazine publishers. Its magazine portfolio includes established brands such as "Stern", "Brigitte" and "Geo" – and young brands like "Barbara", "Beef" and "Chefkoch". It also has products and licences such as the "Schöner Wohnen" furniture collection and digital offerings in all publishing segments, from News to People to Living. In digital marketing G+J operates international platforms (Ligatus, Applike). Territory, one of the largest German communication agencies for brand content, is also part of G+J. In France, G+J operates Prisma Media, the country's largest print and digital magazine publisher in terms of overall reach. G+J holds majority stakes in Motor Presse Stuttgart and in DDV Mediengruppe in Saxony and holds a stake in Spiegel-Gruppe.

BMG

BMG is an international group that manages music publishing rights and recording rights. With 14 branches in 12 major music markets, BMG now represents more than 2.5 million songs and recordings, including those in the catalogs of Alberts Music, Broken Bow Music Group, Bug, Cherry Lane, Chrysalis, Mute, Primary Wave, Sanctuary and Trojan among others.

Arvato

Arvato develops and implements innovative solutions for customers in a wide range of sectors in over 40 countries for all kinds of business processes. These comprise Customer Relationship Management (CRM), Supply Chain Management (SCM), Financial Solutions and IT Services.

Bertelsmann Printing Group

The Bertelsmann Printing Group bundles all of Bertelsmann's offset and gravure printing activities. It comprises the German offset printers Mohn Media, GGP Media and Vogel Druck, the gravure activities of Prinovis in Germany and the United Kingdom, and the offset and digital printers Berryville Graphics, Coral Graphics and OPM in the United States. In addition, Campaign, DeutschlandCard and the Dialogue business offer various digital marketing services and specialise in data-driven multi-channel marketing, campaign management and customer loyalty. The Bertelsmann Printing Group also includes RTV Media Group, the creative service provider MBS and the storage media producer Sonopress.

Bertelsmann Education Group

Bertelsmann Education Group comprises Bertelsmann's education activities. The digital education and service offerings are primarily in the healthcare and technology sectors. The education activities include the e-learning providers Relias Learning.

Corporate Investments

Bertelsmann Investments bundles Bertelsmann's global start-up investments. The activities are focused on the strategic growth markets of Brazil, China and India and on the United States. Investments are made through the funds Bertelsmann Brazil Investments (BBI), Bertelsmann Asia Investments (BAI), Bertelsmann India Investments (BII) and Bertelsmann Digital Media Investments (BDMI).

7. Organisational Structure

The Issuer is the parent company of the Bertelsmann Group comprising a total of more than 900 companies (included in the group's consolidated financial statements) located in most countries of the world.

8. Trend Information

There has been no material adverse change in the prospects of the Issuer since 31 December 2017.

9. Administrative, Supervisory Boards and Management

In its legal form of a KGaA (partnership limited by shares) the business management is conducted by a personally liable shareholder (General Partner). In the case of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA Bertelsmann Management SE, represented by its Executive Board, is responsible for the group management.

Bertelsmann Management SE is incorporated under German law. It is registered in the commercial register of the local court (*Amtsgericht*) of Gütersloh under HRB 9084 and has its corporate seat in Gütersloh, Federal Republic of Germany, and its office address is Carl-Bertelsmann-Straße 270, 33311 Gütersloh, Federal Republic of Germany, telephone number: +49 52 41 80 0.

9.1. Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA

The Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA consists of the following 15 members.

- **Mohn, Christoph, Chairman**
- **Bauer, Prof. Dr.-Ing. Werner Josef, Vice Chairman**
- **Brettmann, Kai**
- **Buberl, Dr. Thomas**
- **Cetin, Murat**
- **Gettkant, Helmut**
- **Hudson, Ian Michael**
- **Leukert, Bernd**
- **Levy-Weiss, Gigi**
- **Mohn, Dr. Brigitte**
- **Mohn, Elisabeth**
- **Pötsch, Hans Dieter**
- **Rorsted, Kasper**
- **Sussieck, Christiane**
- **Uebber, Bodo**

Their position within the Supervisory Board as well as the principal activities performed by them outside the Issuer are published in the section "Boards/Mandates" of the Annual Report 2017 of the Issuer, incorporated by reference in this Prospectus. Furthermore, the Annual Report 2017 shows their membership of other supervisory boards and comparable bodies. As of the date of the Prospectus, there have been no changes to the composition of the Supervisory Board or the principal outside activities performed by members of the Supervisory Board disclosed in the Annual Report 2017 which are significant with respect to the Issuer.

9.2 Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann Management SE

The following table sets forth the names of the 10 members of the Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann Management SE, their positions on the Supervisory Boards as well as the principal activities currently performed by them outside the Issuer. Furthermore, the table shows their membership of other supervisory boards and comparable bodies.

Christoph Mohn

Chairman

Chairman of the Reinhard Mohn Stiftung

Managing Director, Christoph Mohn Internet Holding GmbH

Elisabeth Mohn

Chairwoman of the Board of

Bertelsmann Verwaltungsgesellschaft mbH (BVG)

Vice Chairwoman of the Executive Board,

Bertelsmann Stiftung

Prof. Dr.-Ing. Werner J. Bauer

Vice Chairman

Former Executive Vice President of Nestlé AG, Chief Technology Officer, Head of Innovation, Technology, Research and Development

- GEA-Group AG
- Nestlé Deutschland AG (Chairman)
- # LONZA S.A.
- # Givaudan S.A.

Dr. Thomas Buberl

Chairman of the Executive Board, AXA S.A.

- AXA Konzern AG (Chairman)
- # AXA ASIA
- # AXA Equitable Holdings, Inc.
- # AXA Equitable Life Insurance Company
- # AXA Financial, Inc.
- # AXA Leben AG
- # AXA Versicherungen AG
- # MONY Life Insurance Company of America

Bernd Leukert

Member of the Executive Board, SAP SE,
Products & Innovation

- Deutsches Forschungszentrum für Künstliche Intelligenz (DFKI) GmbH
- # TomTom NV

Gigi Levy-Weiss

Angel Investor

- # Beach Bum Ltd.
- # BrandShield Ltd.
- # Caja Elastic Dynamic Solutions Ltd.
- # Correlense Ltd. Driveway Software Corporation
- # Fusic Ltd.
- # Global-e Online Ltd.
- # IMA Ventures Ltd.
- # Inception VR
- # Jeeng Application Ltd.
- # MarketsBook Ltd.
- # MyHeritage Ltd.
- # Neta Eisenstein Management (2000) Ltd.
- # Premium Domains Ltd.
- # Seven Elements Studios INC.
- # SimilarWeb
- # SpeakEZ Ltd.
- # Touristic Services Ltd.
- # TrustMed Ltd.
- # Volunteer Directly Ltd.

Dr. Brigitte Mohn

Member of the Executive Board, Bertelsmann Stiftung

- Phineo gAG
- Rhön-Klinikum AG
- Clue by Biowink GmbH
- Flytxt B.V.

Hans Dieter Pötsch

Chairman of the Supervisory Board, Volkswagen AG
Chairman of the Executive Board/
Chief Financial Officer, Porsche Automobil Holding SE

- AUDI AG, Ingolstadt
- Autostadt GmbH, Wolfsburg (Chairman)
- Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG
- Wolfsburg AG
- # Porsche Austria Gesellschaft m.b.H., Salzburg
- # Porsche Holding Gesellschaft m.b.H., Salzburg
- # Porsche Retail GmbH, Salzburg
 - Volkswagen Truck & Bus GmbH, Braunschweig

Kasper Rorsted

Chairman of the Executive Board, Adidas AG

Bodo Uebber

Member of the Executive Board, Daimler AG
Finance & Controlling Daimler Financial Services

- Daimler Financial Services AG (Chairman)
 - # BAIC Motor Corporation Ltd.
 - # Delta Topco Ltd.
 - # Mercedes-Benz Grand Prix Ltd.
 - Membership of statutory domestic supervisory boards
 - # Membership of comparable domestic and foreign supervisory bodies of business enterprises
- Currently, all 10 members of the Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann Management SE are also members of the Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA.

9.3 Committees of the Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA

Audit and Finance Committee

Kai Brettmann
Christoph Mohn
Hans Dieter Pötsch
Bodo Uebber (Chairman)

Working Group of Employee Representatives

Elisabeth Mohn (Chairwoman)
Kai Brettmann
Helmut Gettkant
Ian Hudson
Murat Cetin
Christiane Sussieck

9.4 Committees of the Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann Management SE

Personnel Committee

Christoph Mohn (Chairman)
Prof. Dr.-Ing. Werner J. Bauer
Elisabeth Mohn
Hans Dieter Pötsch

Program Committee

Christoph Mohn (Chairman)
Prof. Dr.-Ing. Werner J. Bauer
Dr. Brigitte Mohn
Hans Dieter Pötsch

9.5 Bertelsmann Management SE, the personally liable partner

Members of the Executive Board of Bertelsmann Management SE

The Executive Board of Bertelsmann SE consists of the following 6 members.

Dr. Thomas Rabe, Chairman
Bernd Hirsch
Markus Dohle
Dr. Immanuel Hermreck
Anke Schäferkordt

The position of Mr. Rabe, Mr. Hirsch, Mr. Dohle, Dr. Hermreck and Mrs. Schäferkordt within the Executive Board as well as the principal activities currently performed by them outside the Issuer are published in the section "Boards/Mandates" of the Annual Report 2017 of the Issuer, incorporated by reference in this Prospectus. Furthermore, the Annual Report 2017 shows their membership of other supervisory boards and comparable bodies. As of the date of the Prospectus, there have been no changes to the composition of the Executive Board or the principal outside activities performed by members of the Executive Board disclosed in the Annual Report 2017 which are significant with respect to the Issuer.

The business address of each of the members of the Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA, of the Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann Management SE and of the Executive Board of Bertelsmann Management SE is Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA, Carl-Bertelsmann-Straße 270, 33311 Gütersloh. To the best of the Issuer's knowledge, there are no potential conflicts of interest between any duties to the Issuer of the members of the Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA, of the Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann Management SE and of the Executive Board of Bertelsmann Management SE and their private interests and/or duties. The members of these boards accept memberships on the Supervisory Board of other corporations within the limits prescribed by laws.

9.6 Board Practices

The Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA supervises the management of the business by the general partner and has extensive information and control rights for this purpose. In addition, the Supervisory Boards advise the Executive Board on strategic matters and significant business operations. The Executive and Supervisory Boards work in close cooperation and are therefore able to reconcile the demands of effective corporate governance with the need for rapid decision-making. Fundamental matters of corporate strategy and their implementation are discussed openly and coordinated in joint sessions. Any significant measures to be taken by the Executive Board are subject to approval.

The Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA and Bertelsmann Management SE shareholders exercise their rights and vote at the respective Annual General Meetings. The Annual General Meetings vote on amendments to the articles of association and elect members to the respective Supervisory Board. The members of the Executive and Supervisory Boards are obliged to serve the company's best interests in their work.

For some time, an integral component of the Supervisory Board's work at Bertelsmann has been the delegation of tasks to committees of experts. This serves to increase the monitoring efficiency and advisory expertise of the Supervisory Boards. The Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann Management SE has formed a Personnel Committee and a Program Committee, while the Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA has formed an Audit and Finance Committee and a Working Group of Employee Representatives.

The Personnel Committee also performs the tasks of a nomination committee, in which capacity it recommends to the Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann Management SE suitable candidates for endorsement at the Annual General Meeting.

The Program Committee shall, in place of the Supervisory Board, resolve upon the approval of the Supervisory Board concerning the conclusion of program output deals of RTL Group, for example feature films, series or sports rights.

The Audit and Finance Committee of the Supervisory Board of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA is also regularly involved in the accounting process and monitors the effectiveness of the internal control system, risk management system, and internal auditing system. It also monitors compliance within the Group.

All these committees mentioned above prepare the topics to be addressed during the Supervisory Boards' plenary meetings. The chairmen of each committee then report to the plenary meetings on the work performed. The Supervisory Boards' decision-making powers have been transferred to the committees to the extent permitted by law. The breadth and range of responsibilities and tasks delegated to these

committees are continuously reviewed through various evaluation processes. The appropriate size of the Supervisory Boards and the professional expertise of their members who are drawn from a broad range of industries and areas of activity are key factors in Bertelsmann's effectiveness and independence.

The Working Group of Employee Representatives on the Supervisory Board facilitates the Executive Board's dialog with employee representatives on the Supervisory Board about corporate culture issues as well as the preparation and discussion of matters that are relevant to the Supervisory Board. The creation of this Working Group is indicative of the special corporate culture at Bertelsmann, which promotes active partnership, and this idea has proven highly productive in practice.

10. Declaration on the German Corporate Governance Code for 2017

Three foundations (Bertelsmann Stiftung, Reinhard Mohn Stiftung, and BVG-Stiftung) indirectly hold 80.9 per cent. of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA shares, with the remaining 19.1 per cent. held indirectly by the Mohn family. Bertelsmann Verwaltungsgesellschaft (BVG) controls all voting rights at the Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA and Bertelsmann Management SE General Meetings.

BVG is responsible for upholding the interests of the Bertelsmann Stiftung foundation and the Mohn family as indirect Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA shareholders and ensuring the continuity of the company's management as well as Bertelsmann's distinctive corporate culture. BVG is controlled by a steering committee composed of three representatives of the Mohn family and three additional members who are not members of the Mohn family. Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA is a capital-market-oriented company but is unlisted. Nevertheless, its corporate governance activities closely follow the recommendations of the German Corporate Governance Code in the version dated 7 February 2017, which are primarily aimed at listed companies and those with access to capital markets within the meaning of section 161, paragraph 1, clause 2 of the German Stock Corporation Act (Aktiengesetz).

Exceptions relate primarily to those guidelines which, in the opinion of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA, apply to publicly held enterprises with large numbers of shareholders or anonymous shareholders. The individual remuneration and incentives paid to the members of the Executive Board and Supervisory Boards are not made public, and accordingly no remuneration report is prepared.

11. Historical Financial Information

The consolidated financial statements of Bertelsmann for the financial years ending 31 December 2017 and 31 December 2016 are incorporated herein by reference.

12. Auditing of Historical Annual Financial Information

PricewaterhouseCoopers GmbH Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft (formerly "PricewaterhouseCoopers AG Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft") ("**PwC**") audited Bertelsmann's consolidated financial statements for the financial years ended 31 December 2017 and 2016. The consolidated financial statements were prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards as adopted in the EU (IFRS). In each case an unqualified auditor's report has been provided.

The Auditor's Report on the audited consolidated financial statements for the year ended 31 December 2017 is dated 12 March 2018.

13. Statutory Auditors

Statutory auditors of Bertelsmann are PricewaterhouseCoopers GmbH Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft ("**PwC**"), Kreuzstraße 35, 33602 Bielefeld, Federal Republic of Germany. PwC is a member of the chamber of public accountants (*Wirtschaftsprüferkammer*).

14. Legal and Arbitration Proceedings

Bertelsmann, with its worldwide operations, is always exposed to a variety of legal and regulatory risks ranging from litigation to varying interpretations of tax assessment criteria. These risks are being continuously monitored by the relevant departments within the Group. Except as disclosed in this section "*Legal and Arbitration Proceedings*", there are no, nor have there been any governmental, legal or arbitration proceedings (including any proceedings which are pending or threatened of which the Issuer is aware) which may have or have had in the 12 months preceding the date of this document a significant effect on the financial position or profitability of the Issuer.

In November 2008, RTL II filed legal actions against IP Deutschland, a wholly owned subsidiary of RTL Group, and Seven One Media ("**SOM**") as a result of the 2007 proceedings of the German Federal Cartel Office against the discount scheme agreements ("**share deals**") offered by IP Deutschland and SOM. RTL

It's claim is currently limited to access to information on the basis of which the claimants want to prove that they suffered damages from these discount schemes. The court of first instance in Düsseldorf decided to order an expert report. Similar proceedings of other smaller broadcasters initiated in different courts were unsuccessful or have been withdrawn.

In June 2016, the main competitors of Fun Radio alleged that a host of the morning show had influenced Fun Radio's audience ratings by encouraging his listeners to give favorable treatment to Fun Radio in the Médiamétrie surveys. In response to these allegations, Médiamétrie called a special committee, which ultimately decided to remove Fun Radio from Médiamétrie's overall survey published in July 2016. Following a legal procedure initiated by Fun Radio, Médiamétrie was required to reinstate Fun Radio in the ratings surveys as from September 2016 but, since then, decided to lower Fun Radio's audience results, arguing a possible "halo effect". Thereafter, Fun Radio initiated a procedure to challenge the scientific reliability of the Médiamétrie calculation. In December 2016, the main competitors of Fun Radio also filed a claim for damages claiming unfair competition.

Foreign direct investments in the People's Republic of China are subject to a number of regulatory restrictions. In order to satisfy local requirements, some of Bertelsmann's activities in China are owned by trust structures. Agreements have been signed with these trust structures to secure Bertelsmann's rights. These types of arrangements (known as "VIE" structures) are standard market practice for investments in China. However, these structures are rarely the subject of legal disputes in China, which means that there is a certain risk that it will not be possible to safeguard VIE structures through the courts particularly if the People's Republic changes its policies toward investments by foreigners (particularly in respect of VIE structures) or if courts and authorities change their case law or administrative practice. In 2015 the "PRC Foreign Investment Law" was revised by the Chinese Ministry of Economic Affairs and is being discussed politically. The current draft stipulates that foreign investments in China shall be regulated via a "negative list" which will count the limited number of possible investments and those that are prohibited in particular industries and will also include a ban on VIE structures. In the past, however, such harsh measures have only been reported in exceptional cases. By contrast, observers are anticipating solutions that will only have a minor impact on the Chinese economy. This affects companies within Fremantle Media, BMG, Arvato and the Bertelsmann Education Group as well as investments by Bertelsmann Asia Investments (BAI).

Aside from the matters outlined above, no further significant legal and regulatory risks to Bertelsmann are apparent at this time.

15. Share Capital

The Issuer's registered share capital (*Grundkapital*) currently amounts to EUR 1,000,000,000. It is divided into 83,760 ordinary no-par-value shares. All shares are fully paid-up.

16. Material Contracts

In the usual course of its business, Bertelsmann enters into numerous contracts with various other parties. Bertelsmann has not, however, entered into any material contracts outside the ordinary course of its business within the past two years.

17. Recent Events

On 31 January 2018, Bertelsmann announced its decision to begin evaluating various options for the business unit "Customer Relation Management" ("**CRM**") of Arvato. These options include partnerships as well as a complete or partial sale of the CRM businesses. The Arvato CRM business in the French-speaking territories is excluded from this strategic process.

18. Significant Change in Bertelsmann's financial or trading position

There has been no significant change in the financial or trading position of Bertelsmann since 31 December 2017.

19. Rating

Bertelsmann has been rated by the rating agencies Moody's Investors Service Ltd ("**Moody's**")^{1,2} and Standard & Poor's Financial Services LLC, a part of McGraw Hill Financial Inc. ("**S&P**")³ since June 2002. The issuer rating of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA is currently "Baa1"^{1,4} (outlook: stable)⁴ from Moody's and as "BBB+" (outlook: stable)^{3,4} from S&P. Both credit ratings are in the investment grade category and are in line with Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA's target rating. Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA's short-term credit quality rating is "P-2"^{4,5} from Moody's and "A-2"^{4,5} from S&P. The agency ratings facilitate access to international capital markets and are a key element of Bertelsmann's financial security.

20. Documents on Display

For the life of this Prospectus, the Articles of Association and the documents incorporated by reference into this Prospectus are available in electronic form under (<http://www.bertelsmann.com/investor-relations/bonds/debt-issuance-programme/>) and may also be inspected at the specified office of the Luxembourg Listing Agent in the city of Luxembourg during its business hours.

¹ Moody's is established in the European Community and is registered under Regulation (EC) No 1060/2009 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 September 2009 on credit rating agencies, as amended (the "**CRA Regulation**"). Obligations rated "Baa" are judged to be medium-grade and subject to moderate credit risk and as such may possess certain speculative characteristics.

² The European Securities and Markets Authority publishes on its website (<http://www.esma.europa.eu/page/Listregistered-and-certified-CRAs>) a list of credit rating agencies registered in accordance with the CRA Regulation. That list is updated within five working days following the adoption of a decision under Article 16, 17 or 20 CRA Regulation. The European Commission shall publish that updated list in the Official Journal of the European Union within 30 days following such update.

³ S&P is established in the European Community and is registered under the CRA Regulation. An obligation rated "BBB" exhibits adequate protection parameters. However, adverse economic conditions or changing circumstances are more likely to lead to a weakened capacity of the obligor to meet its financial commitment on the obligation.

⁴ A credit rating assesses the creditworthiness of an entity and informs an investor therefore about the probability of the entity being able to redeem invested capital. It is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold securities and may be revised or withdrawn by the rating agency at any time.

⁵ An obligor rated "P-2" respectively "A-2" has a strong capacity to meet its short-term debt obligations.

CONSENT TO THE USE OF THE PROSPECTUS

Each Dealer and/or each further financial intermediary subsequently reselling or finally placing Notes issued under the Programme is entitled to use the Prospectus in the Grand Duchy of Luxembourg, the Federal Republic of Germany, the Republic of Ireland, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, the Republic of Austria and The Netherlands for the subsequent resale or final placement of the relevant Notes during the respective offer period (as determined in the applicable Final Terms) during which subsequent resale or final placement of the relevant Notes can be made, provided however, that the Prospectus is still valid in accordance with Article 11 (2) of the Luxembourg Law which implements Directive 2003/71/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 4 November 2003 (as amended). The Issuer accepts responsibility for the information given in this Prospectus also with respect to such subsequent resale or final placement of the relevant Notes.

The Prospectus may only be delivered to potential investors together with all supplements published before such delivery. Any supplement to the Prospectus is available for viewing in electronic form on the website of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange (www.bourse.lu) and on the website of Bertelsmann (<http://www.bertelsmann.com/investor-relations/bonds/debt-issuance-programme/>).

When using the Prospectus, each Dealer and/or relevant further financial intermediary must make certain that it complies with all applicable laws and regulations in force in the respective jurisdictions, including with the restrictions specified in the "*PROHIBITION OF SALES TO EEA RETAIL INVESTORS*" legend set out on the cover page of the applicable Final Terms, if any.

In the event of an offer being made by a Dealer and/or a further financial intermediary the Dealer and/or the further financial intermediary shall provide information to investors on the terms and conditions of the Notes at the time of that offer.

Any Dealer and/or a further financial intermediary using the Prospectus shall state on its website that it uses the Prospectus in accordance with this consent and the conditions attached to this consent.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROGRAMME

Under this Programme, Bertelsmann may from time to time issue notes (the "**Notes**") to one or more of the following dealers: Barclays Bank PLC, BNP Paribas, Citigroup Global Markets Limited, Commerzbank Aktiengesellschaft, Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft, J.P. Morgan Securities plc, Merrill Lynch International, Société Générale, The Royal Bank of Scotland plc (trading as NatWest Markets) and any additional Dealer appointed under the Programme from time to time by the Issuer, which appointment may be for a specific issue or on an ongoing basis (each a "**Dealer**", and together, the "**Dealers**").

Deutsche Bank acts as arranger in respect of the Programme (the "**Arranger**").

The maximum aggregate principal amount of the Notes outstanding at any one time under the Programme will not exceed EUR 4,000,000,000 (or its equivalent in any other currency). The Issuer may increase the amount of the Programme in accordance with the terms of the Dealer Agreement from time to time.

Notes may be issued on a continuing basis to one or more of the Dealers. Notes may be distributed by way of public offer or private placements and, in each case, on a syndicated or non-syndicated basis. The method of distribution of each tranche of Notes ("**Tranche**") will be stated in the relevant final terms (the "**Final Terms**"). The Notes may be offered to qualified and non-qualified investors, unless the applicable Final Terms include a legend entitled "*PROHIBITION OF SALES TO EEA RETAIL INVESTORS*".

Notes will be issued in Tranches, each Tranche in itself consisting of Notes which are identical in all respects. One or more Tranches, which are expressed to be consolidated and forming a single series and identical in all respects, but having different issue dates, interest commencement dates, issue prices and dates for first interest payments may form a series ("**Series**") of Notes. Notes will be issued in such denominations as may be agreed between the Issuer and the relevant Dealer(s) and as indicated in the applicable Final Terms save that the minimum denomination of the Notes will be, if in euro, EUR 1,000, and, if in any currency other than euro, an amount in such other currency nearly equivalent to EUR 1,000 at the time of the issue of Notes. Subject to any applicable legal or regulatory restrictions, and requirements of relevant central banks, Notes may be issued in euro or any other currency. The Notes will be freely transferable.

Notes will be issued with a maturity of twelve months or more.

Notes may be issued at an issue price which is at par or at a discount to, or premium over, par, as stated in the relevant Final Terms. The issue price for Notes to be issued will be determined at the time of pricing on the basis of a yield which will be determined on the basis of the orders of the investors which are received by the Dealers during the offer period. Orders will specify a minimum yield and may only be confirmed at or above such yield. The resulting yield will be used to determine an issue price, all to correspond to the yield.

The yield for Notes with fixed interest rates will be calculated by the use of the ICMA method, which determines the effective interest rate of notes taking into account accrued interest on a daily basis.

Application has been made to the Commission, which is the Luxembourg competent authority for the purpose of the Prospectus Directive for its approval of this Prospectus.

Application has been made to the Luxembourg Stock Exchange for Notes issued under this Prospectus to be admitted to trading on the Regulated Market of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange and to be listed on the official list of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange. The Programme provides that Notes may be listed on other or further stock exchanges, as may be agreed between the Issuer and the relevant Dealer(s) in relation to each issue. Notes may further be issued under the Programme which will not be listed on any stock exchange.

Notes will be accepted for clearing through one or more Clearing Systems as specified in the applicable Final Terms. These systems will include those operated by Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt am Main (CBF), Clearstream Banking, société anonyme (CBL) and Euroclear Bank SA/NV (Euroclear). Notes denominated in euro or, as the case may be, such other currency recognised from time to time for the purposes of eligible collateral for Eurosystem monetary policy and intra-day credit operations by the Eurosystem, are intended to be held in a manner, which would allow Eurosystem eligibility. Therefore, these Notes will initially be deposited upon issue with in the case of (i) a new global note either Clearstream Banking société anonyme, Luxembourg or Euroclear Bank SA/NV as common safekeeper or, (ii) a classical global note Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt am Main. It does not necessarily mean that the Notes will be recognised as eligible collateral for Eurosystem monetary policy and intra-day credit

operations by the Eurosystem either upon issue or at any or all times during their life. Such recognition will depend upon satisfaction of the Eurosystem eligibility criteria.

Deutsche Bank Luxembourg S. A. will act as Luxembourg Listing Agent (the "**Listing Agent**") and Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft will act as fiscal agent and paying agent (the "**Fiscal Agent**").

ISSUE PROCEDURES

General

The Issuer and the relevant Dealer(s) will agree on the terms and conditions applicable to each particular Tranche of Notes (the "**Conditions**"). The Conditions will be constituted by the relevant set of terms and conditions set forth below (the "**Terms and Conditions**") as further specified by the provisions of the applicable Final Terms.

Options for sets of Terms and Conditions

A separate set of Terms and Conditions applies to each type of Notes, as set forth below. The Final Terms provide for the Issuer to choose between the following Options:

- Option I: Terms and Conditions for Notes with fixed interest rates;
- Option II: Terms and Conditions for Notes with floating interest rates.

Documentation of the Conditions

The Issuer may document the Conditions of an individual issue of Notes in either of the following ways:

- The Final Terms shall be completed as set out therein. The Final Terms shall determine which of Option I or Option II, including certain further options contained therein, respectively, shall be applicable to the individual issue of Notes by replicating the relevant provisions and completing the relevant placeholders of the relevant set of Terms and Conditions as set out in the Prospectus in the Final Terms. The replicated and completed provisions of the set of Terms and Conditions alone shall constitute the Conditions, which will be attached to each global note representing the Notes of the relevant Tranche. This type of documentation of the Conditions will be required where the Notes are publicly offered, in whole or in part, or are to be initially distributed, in whole or in part, to non-qualified investors.
- Alternatively, the Final Terms shall determine which of Option I or Option II and of the respective further options contained in each of Option I and Option II are applicable to the individual issue by referring to the relevant provisions of the relevant set of Terms and Conditions as set out in the Prospectus only. The Final Terms will specify that the provisions of the Final Terms and the relevant set of Terms and Conditions as set out in the Prospectus, taken together, shall constitute the Conditions. Each global note representing a particular Tranche of Notes will have the Final Terms and the relevant set of Terms and Conditions as set out in the Prospectus attached.

Determination of Options / Completion of Placeholders

The Final Terms shall determine which of the Option I or Option II shall be applicable to the individual issue of Notes. Each of the sets of Terms and Conditions of Option I or Option II contains also certain further options (characterised by indicating the respective optional provision through instructions and explanatory notes set out either on the left of or in square brackets within the text of the relevant set of Terms and Conditions as set out in the Prospectus) as well as placeholders (characterised by square brackets which include the relevant items) which will be determined by the Final Terms as follows:

Determination of Options

The Issuer will determine which options will be applicable to the individual issue either by replicating the relevant provisions in the Final Terms or by reference of the Final Terms to the respective sections of the relevant set of Terms and Conditions as set out in the Prospectus. If the Final Terms do not refer to an alternative or optional provision or such alternative or optional provision is not replicated therein it shall be deemed to be deleted from the Conditions.

Completion of Placeholders

The Final Terms will specify the information with which the placeholders in the relevant set of Terms and Conditions will be completed. In the case the provisions of the Final Terms and the relevant set of Terms and Conditions, taken together, shall constitute the Conditions the relevant set of Terms and Conditions

shall be deemed to be completed by the information contained in the Final Terms as if such information were inserted in the placeholders of such provisions.

All instructions and explanatory notes and text set out in square brackets in the relevant set of Terms and Conditions and any footnotes and explanatory text in the Final Terms will be deemed to be deleted from the Conditions.

Controlling Language

As to the controlling language of the respective Conditions, the following applies:

- In the case of Notes (i) publicly offered, in whole or in part, in the Federal Republic of Germany ("**Germany**"), or (ii) initially distributed, in whole or in part, to non-qualified investors in Germany, German will be the controlling language. If, in the event of such public offer or distribution to non-qualified investors, however, English is chosen as the controlling language, a German language translation of the Conditions will be available from the principal offices of the Fiscal Agent and Bertelsmann, as specified on the back cover of this Prospectus.
- In other cases, the Issuer will elect either German or English to be the controlling language.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Introduction

The Terms and Conditions of the Notes (the "**Terms and Conditions**") are set forth below for two options:

Option I comprises the set of Terms and Conditions that apply to Tranches of Notes with fixed interest rates.

Option II comprises the set of Terms and Conditions that apply to Tranches of Notes with floating interest rates.

The set of Terms and Conditions for each of these Options contains certain further options, which are characterised accordingly by indicating the respective optional provision through instructions and explanatory notes set out either on the left of or in square brackets within the set of Terms and Conditions.

In the Final Terms the Issuer will determine, which of the Option I or Option II including certain further options contained therein, respectively, shall apply with respect to an individual issue of Notes, either by replicating the relevant provisions or by referring to the relevant options.

To the extent that upon the approval of the Prospectus the Issuer does not have knowledge of certain items which are applicable to an individual issue of Notes, this Prospectus contains placeholders set out in square brackets which include the relevant items that will be completed by the Final Terms.

In the case the Final Terms applicable to an individual issue only refer to the further options contained in the set of Terms and Conditions for Option I or Option II, the following applies

[The provisions of the following Terms and Conditions apply to the Notes as completed by the final terms which are attached hereto (the "**Final Terms**"). The blanks in the provisions of these Terms and Conditions which are applicable to the Notes shall be deemed to be completed by the information contained in the Final Terms as if such information were inserted in the blanks of such provisions; alternative or optional provisions of these Terms and Conditions as to which the corresponding provisions of the Final Terms are not completed or are deleted shall be deemed to be deleted from these Terms and Conditions; and all provisions of these Terms and Conditions which are inapplicable to the Notes (including instructions, explanatory notes and text set out in square brackets) shall be deemed to be deleted from these Terms and Conditions, as required to give effect to the terms of the Final Terms. Copies of the Final Terms may be obtained free of charge at the specified office of the Fiscal Agent and at the specified office of any further Paying Agent(s), if any, provided that, in the case of Notes which are not listed on any stock exchange, copies of the relevant Final Terms will only be available to Holders of such Notes.]

OPTION I – Terms and Conditions that apply to Notes with fixed interest rates TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE NOTES (ENGLISH LANGUAGE VERSION)

§ 1

CURRENCY, DENOMINATION, FORM, CERTAIN DEFINITIONS

(1) *Currency; Denomination.* This Series of Notes (the "**Notes**") of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA (the "**Issuer**") is being issued in [**Specified Currency**] (the "**Specified Currency**") in the aggregate principal amount of [**In case the Global Note is an NGN the following applies: (subject to § 1(4)) [aggregate principal amount]**] (in words: [**aggregate principal amount in words**]) in a denomination of [**Specified Denomination**] (the "**Specified Denomination**").

(2) *Form.* The Notes are in bearer form and represented by one or more global notes (each a "**Global Note**").

(3) *Temporary Global Note – Exchange.*

(a) The Notes are initially represented by a temporary Global Note (the "**Temporary Global Note**") without coupons. The Temporary Global Note will be exchangeable for Notes in the Specified Denomination represented by a permanent global note (the "**Permanent Global Note**") without coupons. The

Temporary Global Note and the Permanent Global Note shall each be signed by authorised signatories of the Issuer and shall each be authenticated with a control signature. Definitive Notes and interest coupons will not be issued.

- (b) The Temporary Global Note shall be exchangeable for the Permanent Global Note from a date (the "**Exchange Date**") 40 days after the date of issue of the Temporary Global Note. Such exchange shall only be made to the extent that certifications have been delivered to the effect that the beneficial owner or owners of the Notes represented by the Temporary Global Note is not a U.S. person (other than certain financial institutions or certain persons holding Notes through such financial institutions) as required by U.S. tax law. Payment of interest on Notes represented by a Temporary Global Note will be made only after delivery of such certifications. A separate certification shall be required in respect of each such payment of interest. Any such certification received on or after the 40th day after the date of issue of the Temporary Global Note will be treated as a request to exchange such Temporary Global Note pursuant to this subparagraph (b) of this § 1 (3). Any securities delivered in exchange for the Temporary Global Note shall be delivered only outside of the United States (as defined in § 4 (3)).

(4) *Clearing System.* The Global Note representing the Notes will be kept in custody by or on behalf of the Clearing System. "**Clearing System**" means **[In case of more than one Clearing System the following applies:** each of] the following: [Clearstream Banking AG, Neue Börsenstraße 1, 60487 Frankfurt am Main, Federal Republic of Germany ("**CBF**") [Clearstream Banking société anonyme, 42 Avenue JF Kennedy, 1855 Luxembourg, Grand Duchy of Luxembourg ("**CBL**"), Euroclear Bank SA/NV, Boulevard du Roi Albert II, 1210 Brussels, Belgium ("**Euroclear**"), (CBL and Euroclear each an "**ICSD**" and together "**ICSDs**")] and any successor in such capacity.

In the case of Notes kept in custody on behalf of the ICSDs and the Global Note is an NGN the following applies

[The Notes are issued in new global note ("**NGN**") form and are kept in custody by a common safekeeper on behalf of both ICSDs.

The aggregate principal amount of Notes represented by the Global Note shall be the aggregate amount from time to time entered in the records of both ICSDs (which expression means the records that each ICSD holds for its customers which reflect the amount of such customer's interest in the Notes) shall be conclusive evidence of the aggregate principal amount of Notes represented by the Global Note and, for these purposes, a statement issued by a ICSD stating the amount of Notes so represented at any time shall be conclusive evidence of the records of the relevant ICSD at that time.

On any redemption or payment of interest being made in respect of, or purchase and cancellation of, any of the Notes represented by the Global Note the Issuer shall procure that details of any redemption, payment or purchase and cancellation (as the case may be) in respect of the Global Note shall be entered *pro rata* in the records of the ICSDs and, upon any such entry being made, the aggregate principal amount of the Notes recorded in the records of the ICSDs and represented by the Global Note shall be reduced by the aggregate principal amount of the Notes so redeemed or purchased and cancelled.]

[In case the Temporary Global Note is an NGN the following applies: On an exchange of a portion only of the Notes represented by a Temporary Global Note, the Issuer shall procure that details of such exchange shall be entered *pro rata* in the records of the ICSDs.]

In the case of Notes kept in custody on behalf of the ICSDs and the Global Note is a CGN the following applies

[The Notes are issued in classical global note ("**CGN**") form and are kept in custody by a common depository on behalf of both ICSDs.]

If § 11 on Amendment of the Terms and Conditions and Holders' Representative applies, the following applies

(5) *Holder of Notes*. "**Holder**" means any holder of a proportionate co-ownership or other beneficial interest or right in the Notes.

[(6) *Referenced Conditions*. The Terms and Conditions fully refer to the provisions set out in Schedule 5 of the Amended and Restated Fiscal Agency Agreement dated 18 April 2018 (the "**Agency Agreement**") between the Issuer and Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft acting as Fiscal Agent and Paying Agent (on display under www.bourse.lu) containing primarily the procedural provisions regarding resolutions of Holders shall be fully applicable to the Terms and Conditions.]

§ 2 STATUS, NEGATIVE PLEDGE

(1) *Status*. The obligations under the Notes constitute unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of the Issuer ranking *pari passu* among themselves and *pari passu* with all other unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of the Issuer except for any obligations preferred by law.

(2) *Negative Pledge*. So long as any Note remains outstanding, but only up to the time all amounts of principal and interest have been placed at the disposal of the Principal Paying Agent, the Issuer undertakes not to grant or permit to subsist any pledge, assignment, transfer, mortgage of or other charge or security interest over any or all of its present or future assets, as security for any present or future Capital Market Indebtedness (as defined below) issued or guaranteed by the Issuer (or issued or guaranteed by any other person), without at the same time having the Holders share equally and rateably in such security; provided that this obligation does not apply to security interests of any kind that are already attached to an asset at the time when such asset is acquired for by the Issuer.

For the purpose of these Terms and Conditions "**Capital Market Indebtedness**" means any obligation for the payment of borrowed money which is in the form of, or represented or evidenced by, a certificate of indebtedness or in the form of, or represented or evidenced by, bonds, notes, loan stock or other securities which are, or are capable of being, quoted, listed, dealt in or traded on a stock exchange or other recognised securities market.

§ 3 INTEREST

(1) *Rate of Interest and Interest Payment Dates*. The Notes shall bear interest on their aggregate principal amount at the rate of [**Rate of Interest**] per cent., per annum from (and including) [**Interest Commencement Date**] to (but excluding) the Maturity Date (as defined in § 5 (1)). Interest shall be payable in arrears on [**Fixed Interest Date or Dates**] in each year (each such date, an "**Interest Payment Date**"). The first payment of interest shall be made on [**First Interest Payment Date**] [**If the First Interest Payment Date is not the first anniversary of the Interest Commencement Date the following applies:** and will amount to [**Initial Broken Amount for the Specified Denomination**] per Specified Denomination.] [**If the Maturity Date is not a Fixed Interest Date the following applies:** Interest in respect of the period from [**Fixed Interest Date preceding the Maturity Date**] (inclusive) to the Maturity Date (exclusive) will amount to [**Final Broken Amount for the Specified Denomination**] per Specified Denomination.

(2) *Accrual of Interest*. The Notes shall cease to bear interest from the expiry of the day preceding the day on which they are due for redemption. If the Issuer shall fail to redeem the Notes when due, interest shall continue to accrue at the default rate of

interest established by law¹ on the outstanding aggregate principal amount of the Notes beyond the due date until the expiry of the day preceding the day of the actual redemption of the Notes.

(3) *Calculation of Interest for Partial Periods.* If interest is required to be calculated for a period of less than a full year, such interest shall be calculated on the basis of the Day Count Fraction (as defined below).

(4) *Day Count Fraction.* "**Day Count Fraction**" means, in respect of the calculation of an amount of interest on any Note for any period of time (the "**Calculation Period**"):

In the case of Actual/Actual (ICMA Rule 251) with annual interest payments (excluding the case of short or long coupons), the following applies

[the actual number of days in the Calculation Period divided by the actual number of days in the respective interest period.]

In the case of Actual/Actual (ICMA Rule 251) with annual interest payments (including the case of short coupons) the following applies

[the number of days in the Calculation Period divided by the number of days in the Reference Period in which the Calculation Period falls.]

In the case of Actual/Actual (ICMA Rule 251) with two or more constant interest periods within an interest year (including the case of short coupons), the following applies

[the number of days in the Calculation Period divided by the product of (1) the number of days in the Reference Period in which the Calculation Period falls and (2) the number of Interest Payment Dates that occur in one calendar year or that would occur in one calendar year assuming interest was to be payable in respect of the whole of that year.]

In the case of Actual/Actual

[the number of days in the Calculation Period divided by the number of days in the Reference Period in which the Calculation Period falls.]

¹ The default rate of interest established by law is five percentage points above the basic rate of interest published by *Deutsche Bundesbank* from time to time, §§ 288 paragraph 1, 247 BGB (*German Civil Code*).

(ICMA Rule 251) with annual interest payments (including the case of short coupons) the following applies

In the case of Actual/Actual (ICMA Rule 251) is applicable and if the Calculation Period is longer than one Reference Period (long coupon) the following applies

The following applies for all options of Actual/Actual (ICMA Rule 251) except for option Actual/Actual (ICMA Rule 251) with annual interest payments (excluding the case of short or long coupons

In the case of 30/360, 360/360 or Bond Basis the following applies

[the sum of:

- (a) the number of days in such Calculation Period falling in the Reference Period in which the Calculation Period begins divided by **[In the case of Reference Periods of less than one year the following applies:** the product of (x)] the number of days in such Reference Period **[In the case of Reference Periods of less than one year the following applies:** and (y) the number of Interest Payment Dates that occur in one calendar year or that would occur in one calendar year if interest were payable in respect of the whole of such year]; and
- (b) the number of days in such Calculation Period falling in the next Reference Period divided by **[In the case of Reference Periods of less than one year the following applies:** the product of (x)] the number of days in such Reference Period **[In the case of Reference Periods of less than one year the following applies:** and (y) the number of Interest Payment Dates that occur in one calendar year or that would occur in one calendar year if interest were payable in respect of the whole of such year].]

["Reference Period" means the period from (and including) the Interest Commencement Date to, but excluding, the first Interest Payment Date or from (and including) each Interest Payment Date to, but excluding the next Interest Payment Date. **[In the case of a short first or last Calculation Period the following applies:** For the purposes of determining the relevant Reference Period only, **[deemed Interest Payment Date]** shall be deemed to be an Interest Payment Date.] **[In the case of a long first or last Calculation Period the following applies:** For the purposes of determining the relevant Reference Period only, **[deemed Interest Payment Dates]** shall each be deemed to be an Interest Payment Date.]]

[the number of days in the Calculation Period divided by 360, the number of days to be calculated on the basis of a year of 360 days with 12 30-day months (unless (A) the last day of the Calculation Period is the 31st day of a month but the first day of the Calculation Period is a day other than the 30th or 31st day of a month, in which case the month that includes that last day shall not be considered to be shortened to a 30-day month, or (B) the last day of the Calculation Period is the last day of the month of February in which case the month of February shall not be considered to be lengthened to a 30-day month).]

In the case of 30E/360 or Eurobond Basis the following applies

[the number of days in the Calculation Period divided by 360 (the number of days to be calculated on the basis of a year of 360 days with 12 30-day months, without regard to the date of the first day or last day of the Calculation Period unless, in the case of the final Calculation Period, the Maturity Date is the last day of the month of February, in which case the month of February shall not be considered to be lengthened to a 30-day month).]

§ 4 PAYMENTS

(1) (a) *Payment of Principal.* Payment of principal in respect of Notes shall be made, subject to sub-paragraph (2) below, to the Clearing System or to its order for credit to the accounts of the relevant account holders of the Clearing System outside the United States.

(b) *Payment of Interest.* Payment of interest on Notes shall be made, subject to subparagraph (2), to the Clearing System or to its order for credit to the relevant account holders of the Clearing System.

Payment of interest on Notes represented by the Temporary Global Note shall be made, subject to subparagraph (2), to the Clearing System or to its order for credit to the relevant account holders of the Clearing System, upon due certification as provided in § 1(3)(b).

(2) *Manner of Payment.* Subject to (i) applicable fiscal and other laws and regulations and (ii) any withholding or deduction required pursuant to an agreement described in Section 1471(b) of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code") or otherwise imposed pursuant to Sections 1471 through 1474 of the Code, any regulations or agreements thereunder, any official interpretations thereof, or any law implementing an intergovernmental approach thereto, payments of amounts due in respect of the Notes shall be made in the Specified Currency.

(3) *United States.* For purposes of § 1 (3) and this § 4 and § 6 (2), "United States" means the United States of America (including the States thereof and the District of Columbia) and its possessions (including Puerto Rico, the U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, Wake Island and the Northern Mariana Islands).

(4) *Discharge.* The Issuer shall be discharged by payment to, or to the order of, the Clearing System.

(5) *Payment Business Day.* If the date for payment of any amount in respect of any Note is not a Payment Business Day then the Holder shall not be entitled to payment until the next such day in the relevant place and shall not be entitled to further interest or other payment in respect of such delay.

For these purposes, "Payment Business Day" means any day (other than a Saturday or a Sunday)

In the case of Notes not denominated in euro the following applies

[on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets settle payments in [relevant financial centre(s)]] [and]

In the case the Clearing System and TARGET shall be open the following applies

[on which all relevant parts of the Trans-European Automated Real-time Gross Settlement Express Transfer System 2 ("TARGET") and the relevant Clearing System are open to forward the relevant payment.]

(6) *References to Principal and Interest.* Reference in these Terms and Conditions to principal in respect of the Notes shall be deemed to include, as applicable: the Final Redemption Amount of the Notes; [if redeemable at the option of the Issuer

for other than taxation reasons the following applies: the Call Redemption Amount of the Notes;] **[If redeemable at the option of the Holder the following applies:** the Put Redemption Amount of the Notes;] and any premium and any other amounts which may be payable under or in respect of the Notes.

Reference in these Terms and Conditions to interest in respect of the Notes shall be deemed to include, as applicable, any Additional Amounts which may be payable under § 7.

(7) *Deposit of Principal and Interest.* The Issuer may deposit with the local court (*Amtsgericht*) in Frankfurt am Main principal or interest not claimed by Holders within twelve months after the Maturity Date, even though such Holders may not be in default of acceptance of payment. If and to the extent that the deposit is effected and the right of withdrawal is waived, the respective claims of such Holders against the Issuer shall cease.

§ 5 REDEMPTION

(1) *Redemption at Maturity.* Unless previously redeemed in whole or in part or purchased and cancelled, the Notes shall be redeemed at their Final Redemption Amount on **[Maturity Date]** (the "**Maturity Date**"). The "**Final Redemption Amount**" in respect of each Note shall be its principal amount.

(2) *Early Redemption for Reasons of Taxation.* If as a result of any change in, or amendment to, the laws or regulations of the Federal Republic of Germany or any political subdivision or taxing authority thereto or therein affecting taxation or the obligation to pay duties of any kind, or any change in, or amendment to, an official interpretation or application of such laws or regulations, which amendment or change is effective on or after the date on which the last tranche of this series of Notes was issued, the Issuer is required to pay Additional Amounts (as defined in § 7 herein) on the next succeeding Interest Payment Date (as defined in § 3 (1)), and this obligation cannot be avoided by the use of reasonable measures available to the Issuer, the Notes may be redeemed, in whole but not in part, at the option of the Issuer, upon not more than 60 days' nor less than 30 days' prior notice of redemption given to the Fiscal Agent and, in accordance with **[§ 13]** to the Holders, at their Final Redemption Amount, together with interest (if any) accrued to the date fixed for redemption.

However, no such notice of redemption may be given (i) earlier than 90 days prior to the earliest date on which the Issuer would be obligated to pay such Additional Amounts where a payment in respect of the Notes then due, or (ii) if at the time such notice is given, such obligation to pay such Additional Amounts does not remain in effect.

Any such notice shall be given in accordance with **[§ 13]**. It shall be irrevocable, must specify the date fixed for redemption and must set forth a statement in summary form of the facts constituting the basis for the right of the Issuer so to redeem.

[(3) *Early Redemption at the Option of the Issuer.*

(a) The Issuer may, upon notice given in accordance with clause (b), redeem all or some only of the Notes within the Call Redemption Period(s) at the Call Redemption Amount(s) set forth below together with accrued interest, if any, to (but excluding) the last day of the Call Redemption Period.

In case the Notes are subject to Early Redemption at the Option of the Issuer at specified Call Redemption Amounts the following applies

Call Redemption Period(s)	Call Redemption Amount(s)
[Call Redemption Period(s)]	[Call Redemption Amount(s)]

[]

[]

[]

[]

[If Notes are subject to Early Redemption at the Option of the Holder the following applies: The Issuer may not exercise such option in respect of any Note which is the subject of the prior exercise by the Holder thereof of its option to require the redemption of such Note under subparagraph [(5)] of this § 5.]

- (b) Notice of redemption shall be given by the Issuer to the Holders of the Notes in accordance with [§ 13]. Such notice shall specify:
 - (i) the Series of Notes subject to redemption;
 - (ii) whether such Series is to be redeemed in whole or in part only and, if in part only, the aggregate principal amount of the Notes which are to be redeemed;
 - (iii) the Call Redemption Period, which shall be not less than **[Minimum Notice to Holders]** days nor more than **[Maximum Notice to Holders]** days after the date on which notice is given by the Issuer to the Holders; and
 - (iv) the Call Redemption Amount at which such Notes are to be redeemed.
- (c) In the case of a partial redemption of Notes, Notes to be redeemed shall be selected in accordance with the rules and procedures of the relevant Clearing System. **[In the case of Notes in NGN form the following applies:** Such partial redemption shall be reflected in the records of CBL and Euroclear as either a pool factor or a reduction in aggregate principal amount, at the discretion of CBL and Euroclear.]

In case the the Notes are subject to Early Redemption at the Option of a Holder at specified Put Redemption Amounts the following applies

[(4)] Early Redemption at the Option of a Holder.

- (a) The Issuer shall, at the option of the Holder of any Note, redeem such Note on the Put Redemption Date(s) at the Put Redemption Amount(s) set forth below together with accrued interest, if any, to (but excluding) the Put Redemption Date.

Put Redemption Date(s)	Put Redemption Amount(s)
[Put Redemption Date(s)]	[Put Redemption Amount(s)]
[]	[]
[]	[]

The Holder may not exercise such option in respect of any Note which is the subject of the prior exercise by the Issuer of its option to redeem such Note under this § 5.

- (b) In order to exercise such option, the Holder must, not less than **[Minimum Notice to Issuer]** nor more than **[Maximum Notice to Issuer]** days before the Put Redemption Date on which such redemption is required to be made as specified in the Put Notice (as defined below), send to the specified office of the Fiscal Agent an duly early redemption notice in text format (*Textform*, e.g. email or fax) or in written form ("**Put Notice**"). In the event that the Put Notice is received after 5:00 p.m. Frankfurt time on the **[Minimum Notice to Issuer]** day before the Put Redemption Date, the option shall not have been validly exercised. The Put Notice must specify (i) the total principal amount of the Notes in respect of which such option is exercised, **[and]** (ii) the securities identification numbers of such Notes, if any **[In the case the Global Note is**

In case the Notes are subject to Early Redemption for Reasons of a change of control the following applies

kept in custody by CBF, the following applies: and (iii) contact details as well as a bank account]. The Put Notice may be in the form available from the specified offices of the Fiscal Agent [and the Paying Agent] in the German and English language and includes further information. No option so exercised may be revoked or withdrawn.]

[[5)] *Change of Control.* If at any time while any Notes remain outstanding there occurs a Change of Control and within the Change of Control Period a Rating Downgrade occurs (together, a "**Put Event**"), each Holder will have the option (unless, prior to the giving of the Put Event Notice referred to below, the Issuer gives notice to redeem the Notes in accordance with § 5 (2) (*Early Redemption for Reasons of Taxation*)) to require the Issuer to redeem each of the Notes held by such Holder on the Mandatory Redemption Date at its principal amount together with interest accrued to but excluding the Mandatory Redemption Date.

Promptly upon the Issuer becoming aware that a Put Event has occurred the Issuer shall give notice (a "**Put Event Notice**") to the Holders in accordance with [§ 13] (*Notices*) specifying the nature of the Put Event and the circumstances giving rise to it and the procedure for exercising the option set out in this § 5 [(5)].

In order to exercise the right to require redemption or, as the case may be, purchase of a Note under this § 5 [(5)], the Holder of the Notes must, within the Put Period, give notice to the Fiscal Agent of such exercise in accordance with the standard procedures of [Euroclear] [,] [and CBF] [and] [CBL] (which may include notice being given on his instruction by Euroclear or CBL or any common depository for them to the Fiscal Agent by electronic means) in a form acceptable to Euroclear and CBL from time to time.

For the purposes of this Condition:

A "**Change of Control**" shall be deemed to have occurred at each time (whether or not approved by the personally liable shareholder(s) (*persönlich haftende Gesellschafter(in)*) or the Supervisory Board (*Aufsichtsrat*) of the Issuer) any person or any persons acting in concert or persons acting on behalf of any such persons other than

- (i) Bertelsmann Stiftung,
- (ii) Members of the Mohn Family and/or
- (iii) one or more associations or entities the interests or shares in which are primarily owned, directly or indirectly, by Bertelsmann Stiftung and/or Members of the Mohn Family

acquire directly or indirectly more than 50 per cent. of (i) the shares of the general partner (*Komplementäranteile*) of the personally liable shareholder(s) of the Issuer or of the shares in the personally liable shareholder(s) of the Issuer or (ii) the issued capital (*der Kapitalanteile*) of the Issuer.

"**Bertelsmann Stiftung**" means the Bertelsmann Stiftung, Gütersloh.

"**Members of the Mohn Family**" means Reinhard and Elisabeth Mohn and relatives pursuant to section 1589 of the German Civil Code (*Bürgerliches Gesetzbuch*).

"**Change of Control Period**" means the period ending 120 days after the Date of Announcement.

"**Date of Announcement**" means the date of the first public announcement by the Issuer that a Change of Control has occurred.

"**Investment Grade Rating**" means a rating of at least BBB- (or equivalent thereof) in the case of S&P or a rating of at least Baa3 (or equivalent thereof) in the case of Moody's or the equivalent in the case of any other Rating Agency.

"**Investment Grade Securities**" means Rated Securities which have an Investment Grade Rating from each Rating Agency that assigns a rating to such Rated

Securities.

"Mandatory Redemption Date" is the seventh day after the last day of the Put Period.

"Put Period" means the period of 45 days from and including the date on which a Put Event Notice is given.

"Rated Securities" means:

- (a) the Notes; or
- (b) such other comparable long-term debt of the Issuer selected by the Issuer from time to time and notified to the Holders in accordance with [§ 13] for the purpose of this definition which possesses a rating by any Rating Agency.

"Rating Agency" means each of the rating agencies of Standard & Poor's Ratings Services, a part of McGraw Hill Financial Inc. ("**S&P**") and Moody's Investors Services Inc. ("**Moody's**") or any of their respective successors or any other rating agency designated by the Issuer.

"Rating Downgrade" means either:

- (a) within the Change of Control Period:
 - (i) any rating assigned to the Rated Securities is withdrawn; or
 - (ii) if a Rated Security was an Investment Grade Security on the Date of Announcement, such Rated Security no longer is assigned an Investment Grade Rating by at least one Rating Agency; or
 - (iii) (if at the Date of Announcement no Rated Security had an Investment Grade Rating) the rating of any Rated Security is lowered one or more full rating notch by any Rating Agency (for example from BB+ to BB by S&P and Ba1 to Ba2 by Moody's or such similar lower of equivalent rating), ,

provided that a Rating Downgrade shall occur by virtue of a particular withdrawal of or reduction in rating if the Rating Agency withdrawing or making the reduction in the rating publicly announces or confirms in writing to the Issuer that the withdrawal or reduction was the result, in whole or in part, of the relevant Change of Control; or

- (b) if at the Date of Announcement, there are no Rated Securities and either:
 - (i) the Issuer does not use all reasonable endeavours to obtain, within 45 days of the Date of the Announcement, from a Rating Agency a rating for the Rated Securities; or
 - (ii) the Issuer does use such endeavours, but, as a result of such Change of Control, at the expiry of the Change of Control Period there are still no Investment Grade Securities and the Rating Agency announces or confirms in writing to the Issuer that its declining to assign an Investment Grade Rating was the result, in whole or in part, of the relevant Change of Control.]

§ 6

THE FISCAL AGENT AND THE PAYING AGENTS

(1) *Appointment; Specified Offices.* The initial Fiscal Agent and Paying Agent and their respective initial specified offices are:

Fiscal Agent and	Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft
Paying Agent:	Trust & Agency Services
	Taunusanlage 12
	60325 Frankfurt am Main
	Federal Republic of Germany

The Fiscal Agent and the Paying Agent reserve the right at any time to change their respective specified offices to some other specified office in the same country.

(2) *Variation or Termination of Appointment.* The Issuer reserves the right at any time to vary or terminate the appointment of the Fiscal Agent or any Paying Agent and to appoint another Fiscal Agent or additional or other Paying Agent, provided

that, except as otherwise provided in this paragraph, no such Paying Agent shall be located in the United States. The Issuer shall at all times maintain [(i)] a Fiscal Agent **[In the case of payments in U. S. dollars the following applies:** and, (ii) if payments at or through the offices of all Paying Agents outside the United States (as defined in § 1(3)(b) hereof) become illegal or are effectively precluded because of the imposition of exchange controls or similar restrictions on the full payment or receipt of such amounts in United States dollars, a Paying Agent with a specified office in New York City].

Any variation, termination, appointment or change shall only take effect (other than in the case of insolvency, when it shall be of immediate effect) after not less than 30 nor more than 45 days prior notice thereof shall have been given to the Holders in accordance with [§ 13].

(3) *Agents of the Issuer.* The Fiscal Agent and the Paying Agent act solely as agents of the Issuer and do not have any obligations towards or relationship of agency or trust to any Holder.

§ 7 TAXATION

All amounts payable in respect of the Notes shall be made at source without withholding or deduction for or on account of any present or future taxes or duties of whatever nature imposed or levied by way of withholding or deduction by or on behalf of the Federal Republic of Germany or any political subdivision or any authority thereof or therein having power to tax unless the Issuer is required by law to pay such withholding or deduction.

In such event, the Issuer will pay such additional amounts (the "**Additional Amounts**") as shall be necessary in order that the net amounts received by the Holders, after such withholding or deduction shall equal the respective amounts of principal and interest which would otherwise have been receivable in the absence of such withholding or deduction; except that no such Additional Amounts shall be payable on account of any taxes or duties which:

- (a) are payable by any person acting as custodian bank or collecting agent on behalf of a Holder, or otherwise in any manner which does not constitute a deduction or withholding by the Issuer from payments of principal or interest made by it, or
- (b) are payable by reason of the Holder having, or having had, some personal or business connection with the Federal Republic of Germany and not merely by reason of the fact that payments in respect of the Notes are, or for purposes of taxation are deemed to be, derived from sources in, or are secured in, the Federal Republic of Germany, or
- (c) are deducted or withheld pursuant to (i) any European Union Directive or Regulation concerning the taxation of interest income, or (ii) any international treaty or understanding relating to such taxation and to which the Federal Republic of Germany or the European Union is a party, or (iii) any provision of law implementing, or complying with, or introduced to conform with, such Directive, Regulation, treaty or understanding, or
- (d) are payable by reason of a change in a law that becomes effective more than 30 days after the relevant payment of principal or interest becomes due, or is duly provided for and notice thereof is published in accordance with [§ 13], whichever occurs later.

The tax on interest payments ("*Zinsabschlagsteuer*", since 1 January 2009: "*Kapitalertragsteuer*") which has been in effect in the Federal Republic of Germany since 1 January 1993 and the solidarity surcharge ("*Solidaritätszuschlag*") imposed thereon as from 1 January 1995 do not constitute a tax on interest payments as described above in respect of which Additional Amounts would be payable by the Issuer.

§ 8
PRESENTATION PERIOD

The presentation period provided in § 801 paragraph 1, sentence 1 BGB (*German Civil Code*) is reduced to ten years for the Notes.

§ 9
EVENTS OF DEFAULT

(1) *Events of default.* Each Holder shall be entitled to declare his Notes due and demand immediate redemption thereof at the Final Redemption Amount (as defined in § 5(1), together with accrued interest (if any) to the date of repayment, in the event that any of the following events (each, an "**Acceleration Event**") occurs:

- (a) the Issuer fails to pay principal or interest within 30 days from the relevant due date, or
- (b) the Issuer fails duly to perform any other obligation arising from the Notes which failure is not capable of remedy or, if such failure is capable of remedy, such failure continues for more than 30 days after the Fiscal Agent has received notice thereof from a Holder, or
- (c) any Capital Market Indebtedness (as defined in § 2 (2)) of the Issuer becomes prematurely repayable as a result of a default in respect of the terms thereof, or the Issuer fails to fulfil any payment obligation in excess of EUR 50,000,000 or the equivalent thereof under any Capital Market Indebtedness or under any guarantee or suretyship given for any Capital Market Indebtedness of others within 30 days from its due date or, in the case of a guarantee or suretyship, within 30 days after the guarantee or suretyship has been invoked, unless the Issuer, shall contest in good faith that such payment obligation exists or is due or that such guarantee or suretyship has been validly invoked, or if a security granted therefore is enforced on behalf of or by the creditor(s) entitled thereto, or
- (d) the Issuer announces its inability to meet its financial obligations or ceases its payments, or
- (e) a court opens insolvency proceedings against the Issuer, or the Issuer applies for or institutes such proceedings, or
- (f) the Issuer goes into liquidation unless this is done in connection with a merger, or other form of combination with another company and such company assumes all obligations contracted by the Issuer, as the case may be, in connection with this issue, or
- (g) any governmental order, decree or enactment shall be made in or by the Federal Republic of Germany whereby the Issuer is prevented from observing and performing in full its obligations as set forth in these Terms and Conditions and this situation is not cured within 90 days.

The right to declare Notes due shall terminate if the situation giving rise to it has been cured before the right is exercised.

(2) *Notice.* Any notice, including any notice declaring Notes due, in accordance with subparagraph (1) above shall be made by means of a declaration in text format (*Textform*, e.g. email or fax) or in written form in the German or English language delivered to the specified office of the Fiscal Agent together with proof that such Holder at the time of such notice is a Holder of the relevant Notes by means of a certificate of his Custodian (as defined in [§ 14] (3)) or in other appropriate manner.

§ 10
SUBSTITUTION

(1) *Substitution.* The Issuer may, without the consent of the Holders, if no payment of principal or interest on any of the Notes is in default, at any time substitute for the Issuer or any Subsidiary (as defined below) of its principal debtor in respect of all obligations arising from or in connection with the Notes (the "**Substitute Debtor**")

provided that:

- (a) the Substituted Debtor undertakes to reimburse any Holder for such taxes, fees or duties which may be imposed upon it as a consequence of assumption of the obligations of the Issuer by the Substituted Debtor;
- (b) the Substituted Debtor assumes all obligations of the Issuer arising from or in connection with the Notes;
- (c) the Substituted Debtor is in a position to fulfil all payment obligations arising from or in connection with the Notes without the necessity of any taxes or duties being withheld at source and to transfer all amounts which are required therefore to the Fiscal Agent without any restrictions;
- (d) it is guaranteed that the Issuer irrevocably and unconditionally guarantees in favour of each Holder the payment of all sums payable by the Substitute Debtor in respect of the Notes on terms equivalent to the terms of the form of the senior guarantee of the Issuer in respect of unsubordinated Notes set out in the Agency Agreement **[If the provisions with respect to resolutions of holders are applicable, the following applies:** (whereby to this guarantee the provisions set out below in [§ 11] applicable to the Notes shall apply *mutatis mutandis*); and
- (e) there shall have been delivered to the Fiscal Agent one opinion for each jurisdiction affected of lawyers of recognised standing to the effect that subparagraphs (a), (b), (c) and (d) above have been satisfied.

For purposes of these Terms and Conditions "**Subsidiary**" shall mean any corporation or partnership in which the Issuer directly or indirectly in the aggregate holds 50 per cent. of the capital of any class or of the voting rights.

(2) *Notice.* Notice of any such substitution shall be published in accordance with [§ 13].

(3) *Change of References.* In the event of any such substitution, any reference in these Terms and Conditions to the Issuer shall from then on be deemed to refer to the Substitute Debtor and any reference to the country in which the Issuer is domiciled or resident for taxation purposes shall from then on be deemed to refer to the country of domicile or residence for taxation purposes of the Substitute Debtor. Furthermore, in the event of such substitution the following shall apply:

- (a) in § 7 and § 5 (2) an alternative reference to the Federal Republic of Germany shall be deemed to have been included in addition to the reference according to the preceding sentence to the country of domicile or residence for taxation purposes of the Substitute Debtor; and
- (b) in §9(1)(c) to (g) an alternative reference to the Issuer in its capacity as guarantor shall be deemed to have been included in addition to the reference to the Substitute Debtor.

If the Notes provide for Resolutions of Holders the following applies

[§ 11 AMENDMENT OF THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS, HOLDERS' REPRESENTATIVE

(1) *Amendment of the Terms and Conditions.* In accordance with the Act on Debt Securities of 2009 (*Schuldverschreibungsgesetz aus Gesamtemissionen – "SchVG"*) the Holders may agree with the Issuer on amendments of the Terms and Conditions with regard to matters permitted by the SchVG by resolution with the majority specified in subparagraph (2). Majority resolutions shall be binding on all Holders. Resolutions which do not provide for identical conditions for all Holders are void, unless Holders who are disadvantaged have expressly consented to their being treated disadvantageously.

(2) *Majority.* Resolutions shall be passed by a majority of not less than 75 per cent. of the votes cast. Resolutions relating to amendments of the Terms and Conditions

which are not material and which do not relate to the matters listed in § 5 paragraph 3, Nos. 1 to 8 of the SchVG require a simple majority of the votes cast.

(3) *Resolution of Holders.* Resolutions of Holders shall be passed at the election of the Issuer by vote taken without a meeting in accordance with § 18 SchVG or in a Holder's meeting in accordance with § 9 SchVG

(4) *Chair of the vote.* The vote will be chaired by a notary appointed by the Issuer or, if the Holders' Representative (as defined below) has convened the vote, by the Holders' Representative.

(5) *Voting rights.* Each Holder participating in any vote shall cast votes in accordance with the principal amount or the notional share of its entitlement to the outstanding Notes.

(6) *Holders' Representative.*

[If no Holders' Representative is designated in the Terms and Conditions, the following applies: The Holders may by majority resolution appoint a common representative (the "**Holders' Representative**") to exercise the Holders' rights on behalf of each Holder.]

[If the Holders' Representative is appointed in the Terms and Conditions, the following applies: The common representative (the "**Holders' Representative**") shall be **[Holders' Representative]**. The liability of the Holders' Representative shall be limited to ten times the amount of its annual remuneration, unless the Holders' Representative has acted willfully or with gross negligence.]

The Holders' Representative shall have the duties and powers provided by law or granted by majority resolution of the Holders. The Holders' Representative shall comply with the instructions of the Holders. To the extent that the Holders' Representative has been authorised to assert certain rights of the Holders, the Holders shall not be entitled to assert such rights themselves, unless explicitly provided for in the relevant majority resolution. The Holders' Representative shall provide reports to the Holders on its activities. The regulations of the SchVG apply with regard to the recall and the other rights and obligations of the Holders' Representative.]

§ [12]

FURTHER ISSUES, PURCHASES AND CANCELLATION

(1) *Further Issues.* The Issuer may from time to time, without the consent of the Holders, issue further Notes having the same terms and conditions as the Notes in all respects (or in all respects except for the issue date, interest commencement date and/or issue price) so as to form a single Series with the Notes.

(2) *Purchases.* The Issuer may at any time purchase Notes in the open market or otherwise and at any price. Notes purchased by the Issuer may, at the option of the Issuer, be held, resold or surrendered to the Fiscal Agent for cancellation. If purchases are made by public tender, such tender for Notes must be made available to all Holders alike.

(3) *Cancellation.* All Notes redeemed in full shall be cancelled forthwith and may not be reissued or resold.

§ [13]

NOTICES

[(1) *Publication.* All notices concerning the Notes will be made by means of electronic publication on the internet website of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange (www.bourse.lu). Any notice so given will be deemed to have been validly given on the third day following the date of such publication.

In the case of Notes which are listed on the official list of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange the following applies

In the case of Notes which are unlisted the following applies

(2) *Notification to Clearing System.*

So long as any Notes are listed on the Luxembourg Stock Exchange, subparagraph (1) shall apply. If the Rules of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange so permit, the Issuer may deliver the relevant notice to the Clearing System for communication by the Clearing System to the Holders, in lieu of publication as set forth in subparagraph (1) above; any such notice shall be deemed to have been validly given on the seventh day after the day on which the said notice was given to the Clearing System.]

[(1) *Notification to Clearing System.* The Issuer shall deliver all notices concerning the Notes to the Clearing System for communication by the Clearing System to the Holders. Any such notice shall be deemed to have been validly given on the seventh day after the day on which the said notice was given to the Clearing System.]

[(2)][(3)] *Form of Notice.* Notices to be given by any Holder shall be made by means of a declaration in text format (*Textform*, e.g. email or fax) or in written form to be sent together with the evidence of the Holder's entitlement in accordance with § [14] (3) to the Fiscal Agent. Such notice may be given through the Clearing System in such manner as the Fiscal Agent and the Clearing System may approve for such purpose.

§ [14]

APPLICABLE LAW, PLACE OF JURISDICTION AND ENFORCEMENT

(1) *Applicable Law.* The Notes, as to form and content, and all rights and obligations of the Holders and the Issuer, shall be governed by German law.

(2) *Submission to Jurisdiction.* The District Court (*Landgericht*) in Frankfurt am Main shall have non-exclusive jurisdiction for any action or other legal proceedings ("**Proceedings**") arising out of or in connection with the Notes

(3) *Enforcement.* Any Holder of Notes may in any Proceedings against the Issuer, or to which such Holder and the Issuer are parties, protect and enforce in his own name his rights arising under such Notes on the basis of (i) a statement issued by the Custodian with whom such Holder maintains a securities account in respect of the Notes (a) stating the full name and address of the Holder, (b) specifying the aggregate principal amount of Notes credited to such securities account on the date of such statement and (c) confirming that the Custodian has given written notice to the Clearing System containing the information pursuant to (a) and (b) and (ii) a copy of the Note in global form certified as being a true copy by a duly authorised officer of the Clearing System or a depository of the Clearing System, without the need for production in such Proceedings of the actual records or the global note representing the Notes. For purposes of the foregoing, "**Custodian**" means any bank or other financial institution of recognised standing authorised to engage in securities custody business with which the Holder maintains a securities account in respect of the Notes and includes the Clearing System. Each Holder may, without prejudice to the foregoing, protect and enforce his rights under these Notes also in any other manner permitted in the country of the Proceedings.

§ [15]

LANGUAGE

If the Terms and Conditions are to be in the German language with an English language translation the following applies

[These Terms and Conditions are written in the German language and provided with an English language translation. The German text shall be controlling and binding. The English language translation is provided for convenience only.]

If the Terms and Conditions are to be in the English language with a German language translation the following applies

[These Terms and Conditions are written in the English language and provided with a German language translation. The English text shall be controlling and binding. The German language translation is provided for convenience only.]

If the Terms and Conditions are to be in the German language only the following applies

[These Terms and Conditions are written in the German language only.]

If the Terms and Conditions are to be in the English language only the following applies

[These Terms and Conditions are written in the English language only.]

In the case of Notes which are to be publicly offered, in whole or in part, in Germany or distributed, in whole or in part, to non-qualified investors in Germany with English language Conditions the following applies

[Eine deutsche Übersetzung der Anleihebedingungen wird bei der Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA, Carl-Bertelsmann-Straße 270, 33311 Gütersloh, Federal Republic of Germany, zur kostenlosen Ausgabe bereitgehalten.]

OPTION II – Terms and Conditions that apply to Notes with floating interest rates

TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE NOTES(ENGLISH LANGUAGE VERSION)

§ 1

CURRENCY, DENOMINATION, FORM, CERTAIN DEFINITIONS

(1) *Currency; Denomination.* This Series of Notes (the "**Notes**") of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA (the "**Issuer**") is being issued in [**Specified Currency**] (the "**Specified Currency**") in the aggregate principal amount of [**In case the Global Note is an NGN the following applies: (subject to § 1(4)) [aggregate principal amount]**] (in words: [**aggregate principal amount in words**]) in a denomination of [**Specified Denomination**] (the "**Specified Denomination**").

(2) *Form.* The Notes are in bearer form and represented by one or more global notes (each a "**Global Note**").

(3) *Temporary Global Note – Exchange.*

(a) The Notes are initially represented by a temporary Global Note (the "**Temporary Global Note**") without coupons. The Temporary Global Note will be exchangeable for Notes in the Specified Denomination represented by a permanent global note (the "**Permanent Global Note**") without coupons. The Temporary Global Note and the Permanent Global Note shall each be signed by authorised signatories of the Issuer and shall each be authenticated with a control signature. Definitive Notes and interest coupons will not be issued.

(b) The Temporary Global Note shall be exchangeable for the Permanent Global Note from a date (the "**Exchange Date**") 40 days after the date of issue of the Temporary Global Note. Such exchange shall only be made to the extent that certifications have been delivered to the effect that the beneficial owner or owners of the Notes represented by the Temporary Global Note is not a U.S. person (other than certain financial institutions or certain persons holding Notes through such financial institutions) as required by U.S. tax law. Payment of interest on Notes represented by a Temporary Global Note will be made only after delivery of such certifications. A separate certification shall be required in respect of each such payment of interest. Any such certification received on or after the 40th day after the date of issue of the Temporary Global Note will be treated as a request to exchange such Temporary Global Note pursuant to this subparagraph (b) of this § 1 (3). Any securities delivered in exchange for the Temporary Global Note shall be delivered only outside of the United States (as defined in § 4 (3)).

(4) *Clearing System.* The Global Note representing the Notes will be kept in custody by or on behalf of the Clearing System. "**Clearing System**" means [**In case of more than one Clearing System the following applies: each of**] the following: [Clearstream Banking AG, Neue Börsenstraße 1, 60487 Frankfurt am Main, Federal Republic of Germany ("**CBF**") [Clearstream Banking société anonyme, 42 Avenue JF Kennedy, 1855 Luxembourg, Grand Duchy of Luxembourg ("**CBL**"), Euroclear Bank SA/NV, Boulevard du Roi Albert II, 1210 Brussels, Belgium ("**Euroclear**"), (CBL and Euroclear each an "**ICSD**" and together "**ICSDs**") and any successor in such capacity.

In the case of Notes kept in custody on behalf of the ICSDs and the Global Note is an NGN the following applies

[The Notes are issued in new global note ("**NGN**") form and are kept in custody by a common safekeeper on behalf of both ICSDs.

The aggregate principal amount of Notes represented by the Global Note shall be the aggregate amount from time to time entered in the records of both ICSDs (which expression means the records that each ICSD holds for its customers which reflect the amount of such customer's interest in the Notes) shall be conclusive evidence of the aggregate principal amount of Notes represented by the Global Note and, for these purposes, a statement issued by a ICSD stating the amount of Notes so represented at any time shall be conclusive evidence of the records of the relevant ICSD at that time.

In the case of Notes kept in custody on behalf of the ICSDs and the Global Note is a CGN the following applies

If § 11 on Amendment of the Terms and Conditions and Holders' Representative applies, the following applies

On any redemption or payment of interest being made in respect of, or purchase and cancellation of, any of the Notes represented by the Global Note the Issuer shall procure that details of any redemption, payment or purchase and cancellation (as the case may be) in respect of the Global Note shall be entered *pro rata* in the records of the ICSDs and, upon any such entry being made, the aggregate principal amount of the Notes recorded in the records of the ICSDs and represented by the Global Note shall be reduced by the aggregate principal amount of the Notes so redeemed or purchased and cancelled.]

[In case the Temporary Global Note is an NGN the following applies: On an exchange of a portion only of the Notes represented by a Temporary Global Note, the Issuer shall procure that details of such exchange shall be entered *pro rata* in the records of the ICSDs.]

[The Notes are issued in classical global note ("CGN") form and are kept in custody by a common depository on behalf of both ICSDs.]

(5) *Holder of Notes.* "**Holder**" means any holder of a proportionate co-ownership or other beneficial interest or right in the Notes.

[(6) *Referenced Conditions.* The Terms and Conditions fully refer to the provisions set out in Schedule 5 of the Amended and Restated Fiscal Agency Agreement dated 18 April 2018 (the "**Agency Agreement**") between the Issuer and Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft acting as Fiscal Agent and Paying Agent (on display under www.bourse.lu) containing primarily the procedural provisions regarding resolutions of Holders shall be fully applicable to the Terms and Conditions.]

§ 2 STATUS, NEGATIVE PLEDGE

(1) *Status.* The obligations under the Notes constitute unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of the Issuer ranking *pari passu* among themselves and *pari passu* with all other unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of the Issuer except for any obligations preferred by law.

(2) *Negative Pledge.* So long as any Note remains outstanding, but only up to the time all amounts of principal and interest have been placed at the disposal of the Principal Paying Agent, the Issuer undertakes not to grant or permit to subsist any pledge, assignment, transfer, mortgage of or other charge or security interest over any or all of its present or future assets, as security for any present or future Capital Market Indebtedness (as defined below) issued or guaranteed by the Issuer (or issued or guaranteed by any other person), without at the same time having the Holders share equally and rateably in such security; provided that this obligation does not apply to security interests of any kind that are already attached to an asset at the time when such asset is acquired for by the Issuer.

For the purpose of these Terms and Conditions "**Capital Market Indebtedness**" means any obligation for the payment of borrowed money which is in the form of, or represented or evidenced by, a certificate of indebtedness or in the form of, or represented or evidenced by, bonds, notes, loan stock or other securities which are, or are capable of being, quoted, listed, dealt in or traded on a stock exchange or other recognised securities market.

**§ 3
INTEREST**

(1) *Interest Payment Dates.*

(a) The Notes bear interest on their aggregate principal amount from **[Interest Commencement Date]** (inclusive) (the "**Interest Commencement Date**") to the first Interest Payment Date (exclusive) and thereafter from each Interest Payment Date (inclusive) to the next following Interest Payment Date (exclusive). Interest on the Notes shall be payable on each Interest Payment Date.

(b) "**Interest Payment Date**" means

In the case of Specified Interest Payment Dates the following applies

[each [Specified Interest Payment Dates].]

In the case of Specified Interest Periods the following applies

[each date which (except as otherwise provided in these Terms and Conditions) falls [number] [weeks] [months] after the preceding Interest Payment Date or, in the case of the first Interest Payment Date, after the Interest Commencement Date.]

(c) If any Interest Payment Date would otherwise fall on a day which is not a Business Day (as defined below), it shall be:

In the case of the Modified Following Business Day Convention the following applies

[postponed to the next day which is a Business Day unless it would thereby fall into the next calendar month, in which event the Interest Payment Date shall be the immediately preceding Business Day.]

In the case of the FRN Convention the following applies

[postponed to the next day which is a Business Day unless it would thereby fall into the next calendar month, in which event (i) the Interest Payment Date shall be the immediately preceding Business Day and (ii) each subsequent Interest Payment Date shall be the last Business Day in the month which falls [number] months after the preceding applicable Interest Payment Date.]

In the case of the Following Business Day Convention the following applies

[postponed to the next day which is a Business Day.]

In the case of the Preceding Business Day Convention the following applies

[the immediately preceding Business Day.]

(d) "**Business Day**" means a day

In the case

[(other than a Saturday or a Sunday) on which commercial banks and foreign

the Specified Currency is not EUR the following applies

exchange markets are open for business and settle payments in [relevant financial centre(s)] [.] [and]

In the case the Clearing System and TARGET shall be open the following applies

[on which the Clearing System as well as all relevant parts of the Trans-European Automated Real-Time Gross Settlement Transfer system 2 ("TARGET") are open to effect payments.]

In the case the offered quotation for deposits in the Specified Currency is EURIBOR the following applies

[(2) *Rate of Interest.* The rate of interest (the "**Rate of Interest**") for each Interest Period (as defined below) will, except as provided below, be the offered quotation (expressed as a percentage rate *per annum*) for deposits in the Specified Currency for that Interest Period which appears on the Screen Page as of 11:00 a.m. (Brussels time) on the Interest Determination Date (as defined below) **[In the case of a Margin the following applies: [plus] [minus] the Margin (as defined below)],** all as determined by the Calculation Agent.

"**Interest Period**" means each period from (and including) the Interest Commencement Date to (but excluding) the first Interest Payment Date and from (and including) each Interest Payment Date to (but excluding) the following Interest Payment Date.

"**Interest Determination Date**" means the second TARGET Business Day prior to the commencement of the relevant Interest Period. "**TARGET Business Day**" means a day on which the Trans-European Automated Real-time Gross Settlement Transfer system 2 ("**TARGET**") is open.

[In the case of a Margin the following applies: "Margin" means [●] per cent., per annum.]

"**Screen Page**" means Reuters screen page EURIBOR01 or any successor page.

If the Screen Page is not available or if no such quotation appears as at such time, the Calculation Agent shall request each of the Reference Banks (as defined below) to provide the Calculation Agent with its offered quotation (expressed as a percentage rate *per annum*) for deposits in the Specified Currency for the relevant Interest Period to prime banks in the interbank market of the Euro-Zone at approximately 11.00 a.m. (Brussels time) on the Interest Determination Date. If two or more of the Reference Banks provide the Calculation Agent with such offered quotations, the Rate of Interest for such Interest Period shall be the arithmetic mean (rounded if necessary to the nearest one thousandth of a percentage point, with 0.0005 being rounded upwards) of such offered quotations **[In the case of a Margin the following applies: [plus] [minus] the Margin],** all as determined by the Calculation Agent.

If on any Interest Determination Date only one or none of the Reference Banks provides the Calculation Agent with such offered quotations as provided in the preceding paragraph, the Rate of Interest for the relevant Interest Period shall be the rate *per annum* which the Calculation Agent determines as being the arithmetic mean (rounded if necessary to the nearest one thousandth of a percentage point, with 0.0005 being rounded upwards) of the rates, as communicated to (and at the request of) the Calculation Agent by major banks in the interbank market in the Euro-Zone, selected by the Calculation Agent acting in good faith, at which such banks offer, as at 11.00 a.m. (Brussels time) on the relevant Interest Determination Date, loans in the Specified Currency for the relevant Interest Period and in a representative amount to leading European banks **[In case of a Margin the following applies: [plus] [minus] the Margin].**

In the case the offered quotation for deposits in the Specified Currency is LIBOR the following applies

"Euro-Zone" means the region comprised of those member states of the European Union that have adopted, or will have adopted from time to time, the single currency in accordance with the Treaty establishing the European Community (signed in Rome on 25 March 1957), as amended by the Treaty on European Union (signed in Maastricht on 7 February 1992), the Amsterdam Treaty of 2 October 1997 and the Treaty of Lisbon of 13 December 2007, as further amended from time to time.]

As used herein, "Reference Banks" means four major banks in the interbank market in the Euro-Zone.

If the Rate of Interest cannot be determined in accordance with the foregoing provisions of this subparagraph (2), the Rate of Interest shall be the offered quotation on the Screen Page, as described above, on the last day preceding the Interest Determination Date on which such offered quotation was displayed [[plus] [minus] the Margin (as defined above)], all as determined by the Calculation Agent.]

[(2) *Rate of Interest.* The rate of interest (the "Rate of Interest") for each Interest Period (as defined below) will, except as provided below, be the offered quotation (expressed as a percentage rate *per annum*) for deposits in the Specified Currency for that Interest Period which appears on the Screen Page as of 11:00 a.m. (London time) on the Interest Determination Date (as defined below) **[In the case of a Margin the following applies: [plus] [minus] the Margin (as defined below)],** all as determined by the Calculation Agent.

"Interest Period" means each period from (and including) the Interest Commencement Date to (but excluding) the first Interest Payment Date and from (and including) each Interest Payment Date to (but excluding) the following Interest Payment Date.

"Interest Determination Date" means the [first][second] [relevant financial centre(s)] Business Day prior to the commencement of the relevant Interest Period. "[relevant financial centre(s)] Business Day" means a day (other than a Saturday or Sunday) on which commercial banks are open for business (including dealings in foreign exchange and foreign currency) in [relevant financial centre(s)].]

[In the case of a Margin the following applies: "Margin" means [•] per cent. per annum.]

"Screen Page" means Reuters screen page [LIBOR01][LIBOR02] or any successor page.

If the Screen Page is not available or if no such quotation appears as at such time, the Calculation Agent shall request each of the Reference Banks (as defined below) to provide the Calculation Agent with its offered quotation (expressed as a percentage rate *per annum*) for deposits in the Specified Currency for the relevant Interest Period to prime banks in the London interbank market at approximately 11.00 a.m. (London time) on the Interest Determination Date. If two or more of the Reference Banks provide the Calculation Agent with such offered quotations, the Rate of Interest for such Interest Period shall be the arithmetic mean (rounded if necessary to the nearest one hundred-thousandth of a percentage point, with 0.000005 being rounded upwards) of such offered quotations **[In the case of a Margin the following applies: [plus] [minus] the Margin],** all as determined by the Calculation Agent.

If on any Interest Determination Date only one or none of the Reference Banks provides the Calculation Agent with such offered quotations as provided in the preceding paragraph, the Rate of Interest for the relevant Interest Period shall be the rate *per annum* which the Calculation Agent determines as being the arithmetic mean (rounded if necessary to the nearest one hundred-thousandth of a percentage point, with 0.000005 being rounded upwards) of the rates, as communicated to (and at the request of) the Calculation Agent by major banks in the London interbank market, selected by the Calculation Agent acting in good faith, at which such banks offer, as at 11.00 a.m. (London time) on the relevant Interest Determination Date,

loans in the Specified Currency for the relevant Interest Period and in a representative amount to leading European banks **[In case of a Margin the following applies: [plus] [minus] the Margin]**.

As used herein, "**Reference Banks**" means four major banks in the London interbank market.

If the Rate of Interest cannot be determined in accordance with the foregoing provisions of this subparagraph (2), the Rate of Interest shall be the offered quotation on the Screen Page, as described above, on the last day preceding the Interest Determination Date on which such offered quotation was displayed **[[plus] [minus] the Margin (as defined above)]**, all as determined by the Calculation Agent.]

In the case of a Minimum Rate of Interest the following applies

[(3) *Minimum Rate of Interest.* If the Rate of Interest in respect of any Interest Period determined in accordance with the above provisions is less than **[Minimum Rate of Interest]**, the Rate of Interest for such Interest Period shall be **[Minimum Rate of Interest].]**

In the case of a Maximum Rate of Interest the following applies

[(3) *Maximum Rate of Interest.* If the Rate of Interest in respect of any Interest Period determined in accordance with the above provisions is greater than **[Maximum Rate of Interest]**, the Rate of Interest for such Interest Period shall be **[Maximum Rate of Interest].]**

[(4) *Interest Amount.* The Calculation Agent will, on or as soon as practicable after each time at which the Rate of Interest is to be determined, determine the Rate of Interest and calculate the amount of interest (the "**Interest Amount**") payable on the Notes for the relevant Interest Period. Each Interest Amount shall be calculated by applying the Rate of Interest and the Day Count Fraction (as defined below) to the aggregate principal amount of Notes and rounding the resultant figure to the nearest unit of the Specified Currency, with 0.5 of such unit being rounded upwards.

[(5) *Notification of Rate of Interest and Interest Amount.* The Calculation Agent will cause the Rate of Interest, each Interest Amount for each Interest Period, each Interest Period and the relevant Interest Payment Date to be notified to the Issuer and to the Holders in accordance with **[§ 13]** as soon as possible after their determination, but in no event later than the fourth **[TARGET] [relevant financial centre(s)]** Business Day (as defined in § 3 (2)) thereafter and if required by the rules of any stock exchange on which the Notes are from time to time listed, to such stock exchange as soon as possible after their determination, but in no event later than the first day of the relevant Interest Period. Each Interest Amount and Interest Payment Date so notified may subsequently be amended (or appropriate alternative arrangements made by way of adjustment) without notice in the event of an extension or shortening of the Interest Period. Any such amendment will be promptly notified to any stock exchange on which the Notes are then listed and to the Holders in accordance with **[§ 13]**.

[(6) *Determinations Binding.* All certificates, communications, opinions, determinations, calculations, quotations and decisions given, expressed, made or obtained for the purposes of the provisions of this § 3 by the Calculation Agent shall (in the absence of manifest error) be binding on the Issuer, the Fiscal Agent, the Paying Agents and the Holders.

[(7) *Accrual of Interest.* The Notes shall cease to bear interest from the expiry of the day preceding of the day on which they are due for redemption. If the Issuer shall fail to redeem the Notes when due, interest shall continue to accrue on the outstanding aggregate principal amount of the Notes beyond the due date until the expiry of the

day preceding of the day of actual redemption of the Notes. The applicable Rate of Interest will be the default rate of interest established by law¹.

[(8)] *Day Count Fraction*. "**Day Count Fraction**" means, in respect of the calculation of an amount of interest on any Note for any period of time (the "**Calculation Period**"):

In the case of Actual/365 (Fixed) the following applies

[the actual number of days in the Calculation Period divided by 365.]

In the case of Actual/360 the following applies

[the actual number of days in the Calculation Period divided by 360.]

§ 4 PAYMENTS

(1) (a) *Payment of Principal*. Payment of principal in respect of Notes shall be made, subject to sub-paragraph (2) below, to the Clearing System or to its order for credit to the accounts of the relevant account holders of the Clearing System outside the United States.

(b) *Payment of Interest*. Payment of interest on Notes shall be made, subject to subparagraph (2), to the Clearing System or to its order for credit to the relevant account holders of the Clearing System.

Payment of interest on Notes represented by the Temporary Global Note shall be made, subject to subparagraph (2), to the Clearing System or to its order for credit to the relevant account holders of the Clearing System, upon due certification as provided in § 1(3)(b).

(2) *Manner of Payment*. Subject to (i) applicable fiscal and other laws and regulations and (ii) any withholding or deduction required pursuant to an agreement described in Section 1471(b) of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "**Code**") or otherwise imposed pursuant to Sections 1471 through 1474 of the Code, any regulations or agreements thereunder, any official interpretations thereof, or any law implementing an intergovernmental approach thereto, payments of amounts due in respect of the Notes shall be made in the Specified Currency.

(3) *United States*. For purposes of § 1 (3) and this § 4 and § 6 (2), "**United States**" means the United States of America (including the States thereof and the District of Columbia) and its possessions (including Puerto Rico, the U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, Wake Island and the Northern Mariana Islands).

(4) *Discharge*. The Issuer shall be discharged by payment to, or to the order of, the Clearing System.

(5) *Payment Business Day*. If the date for payment of any amount in respect of any Note is not a Payment Business Day then the Holder shall not be entitled to payment until the next such day in the relevant place and shall not be entitled to further interest or other payment in respect of such delay.

For these purposes, "**Payment Business Day**" means any day which is a Business Day.

(6) *References to Principal and Interest*. Reference in these Terms and Conditions to principal in respect of the Notes shall be deemed to include, as applicable: the Final Redemption Amount of the Notes; **[If redeemable at the option of the Issuer**

¹ The default rate of interest established by law is five percentage points above the basic rate of interest published by Deutsche Bundesbank from time to time, §§ 288 paragraph 1, 247 BGB (*German Civil Code*).

for other than taxation reasons the following applies: the Call Redemption Amount of the Notes;] and any premium and any other amounts which may be payable under or in respect of the Notes.

Reference in these Terms and Conditions to interest in respect of the Notes shall be deemed to include, as applicable, any Additional Amounts which may be payable under § 7.

(7) *Deposit of Principal and Interest.* The Issuer may deposit with the local court (*Amtsgericht*) in Frankfurt am Main principal or interest not claimed by Holders within twelve months after the Maturity Date, even though such Holders may not be in default of acceptance of payment. If and to the extent that the deposit is effected and the right of withdrawal is waived, the respective claims of such Holders against the Issuer shall cease.

§ 5 REDEMPTION

(1) *Redemption at Maturity.* Unless previously redeemed in whole or in part or purchased and cancelled, the Notes shall be redeemed at their Final Redemption Amount on the Interest Payment Date falling in **[Redemption Month]** (the "**Maturity Date**"). The "**Final Redemption Amount**" in respect of each Note shall be its principal amount.

(2) *Early Redemption for Reasons of Taxation.* If as a result of any change in, or amendment to, the laws or regulations of the Federal Republic of Germany or any political subdivision or taxing authority thereto or therein affecting taxation or the obligation to pay duties of any kind, or any change in, or amendment to, an official interpretation or application of such laws or regulations, which amendment or change is effective on or after the date on which the last tranche of this series of Notes was issued, the Issuer is required to pay Additional Amounts (as defined in § 7 herein) on the next succeeding Interest Payment Date (as defined in § 3 (1)), and this obligation cannot be avoided by the use of reasonable measures available to the Issuer, the Notes may be redeemed, in whole but not in part, at the option of the Issuer, upon not more than 60 days' nor less than 30 days' prior notice of redemption given to the Fiscal Agent and, in accordance with [§ 13] to the Holders, at their Final Redemption Amount, together with interest (if any) accrued to the date fixed for redemption.

However, no such notice of redemption may be given (i) earlier than 90 days prior to the earliest date on which the Issuer would be obligated to pay such Additional Amounts where a payment in respect of the Notes then due, or (ii) if at the time such notice is given, such obligation to pay such Additional Amounts does not remain in effect. The date fixed for redemption must be an Interest Payment Date.

Any such notice shall be given in accordance with [§ 13]. It shall be irrevocable, must specify the date fixed for redemption and must set forth a statement in summary form of the facts constituting the basis for the right of the Issuer so to redeem.

[(3) *Early Redemption at the Option of the Issuer.*

(a) The Issuer may, upon notice given in accordance with clause (b), redeem all or some only of the Notes on the Interest Payment Date following **[number]** years after the Interest Commencement Date and on each Interest Payment Date thereafter (each a "**Call Redemption Date**" at the Final Redemption Amount together with accrued interest, if any, to (but excluding) the Call Redemption Date.

(b) Notice of redemption shall be given by the Issuer to the Holders of the Notes in accordance with [§ 13]. Such notice shall specify:

- (i) the Series of Notes subject to redemption;
- (ii) whether such Series is to be redeemed in whole or in part only and, if in

If Notes are subject to Early Redemption at the Option of the Issuer at the Final Redemption Amount the following applies

If Notes are subject to Early Redemption for Reasons of a change of control the following applies

part only, the aggregate principal amount of the Notes which are to be redeemed; and

- (iii) the Call Redemption Date, which shall be not less than **[Minimum Notice to Holders]** nor more than **[Maximum Notice to Holders]** days after the date on which notice is given by the Issuer to the Holders.
- (c) In the case of a partial redemption of Notes, Notes to be redeemed shall be selected in accordance with the rules and procedures of the relevant Clearing System.**[In the case of Notes in NGN form the following applies:** Such partial redemption shall be reflected in the records of CBL and Euroclear as either a pool factor or a reduction in aggregate principal amount, at the discretion of CBL and Euroclear.]

[[4)] Change of Control. If at any time while any Notes remain outstanding there occurs a Change of Control and within the Change of Control Period a Rating Downgrade occurs (together, a "**Put Event**"), each Holder will have the option (unless, prior to the giving of the Put Event Notice referred to below, the Issuer gives notice to redeem the Notes in accordance with § 5 (2) (*Early Redemption for Reasons of Taxation*)) to require the Issuer to redeem each of the Notes held by such Holder on the Mandatory Redemption Date at its principal amount together with interest accrued to but excluding the Mandatory Redemption Date.

Promptly upon the Issuer becoming aware that a Put Event has occurred the Issuer shall give notice (a "**Put Event Notice**") to the Holders in accordance with [§ 13] (*Notices*) specifying the nature of the Put Event and the circumstances giving rise to it and the procedure for exercising the option set out in this § 5 [(4)].

In order to exercise the right to require redemption or, as the case may be, purchase of a Note under this § 5 [(4)], the Holder of the Notes must, within the Put Period, give notice to the Fiscal Agent of such exercise in accordance with the standard procedures of [Euroclear] [,] [and CBF] [and] [CBL] (which may include notice being given on his instruction by Euroclear or CBL or any common depository for them to the Fiscal Agent by electronic means) in a form acceptable to Euroclear and CBL from time to time.

For the purposes of this Condition:

A "**Change of Control**" shall be deemed to have occurred at each time (whether or not approved by the personally liable shareholder(s) (*persönlich haftende Gesellschafter(in)*) or the Supervisory Board (*Aufsichtsrat*) of the Issuer) any person or any persons acting in concert or persons acting on behalf of any such persons other than

- (i) Bertelsmann Stiftung,
- (ii) Members of the Mohn Family and/or
- (iii) one or more associations or entities the interests or shares in which are primarily owned, directly or indirectly, by Bertelsmann Stiftung and/or Members of the Mohn Family

acquire directly or indirectly more than 50 per cent. of (i) the shares of the general partner (*Komplementäranteile*) of the personally liable shareholder(s) of the Issuer or of the shares in the personally liable shareholder(s) of the Issuer or (ii) the issued capital (*der Kapitalanteile*) of the Issuer.

"**Bertelsmann Stiftung**" means the Bertelsmann Stiftung, Gütersloh.

"**Members of the Mohn Family**" means Reinhard and Elisabeth Mohn and relatives pursuant to section 1589 of the German Civil Code (*Bürgerliches Gesetzbuch*).

"**Change of Control Period**" means the period ending 120 days after the Date of Announcement.

"**Date of Announcement**" means the date of the first public announcement by the Issuer that a Change of Control has occurred.

"Investment Grade Rating" means a rating of at least BBB- (or equivalent thereof) in the case of S&P or a rating of at least Baa3 (or equivalent thereof) in the case of Moody's or the equivalent in the case of any other Rating Agency.

"Investment Grade Securities" means Rated Securities which have an Investment Grade Rating from each Rating Agency that assigns a rating to such Rated Securities.

"Mandatory Redemption Date" is the seventh day after the last day of the Put Period.

"Put Period" means the period of 45 days from and including the date on which a Put Event Notice is given.

"Rated Securities" means:

- (a) the Notes; or
- (b) such other comparable long-term debt of the Issuer selected by the Issuer from time to time and notified to the Holders in accordance with [§ 13] for the purpose of this definition which possesses a rating by any Rating Agency.

"Rating Agency" means each of the rating agencies of Standard & Poor's Ratings Services, a part of McGraw Hill Financial Inc. ("**S&P**") and Moody's Investors Services Inc. ("**Moody's**") or any of their respective successors or any other rating agency designated by the Issuer.

"Rating Downgrade" means either:

- (a) within the Change of Control Period:
 - (i) any rating assigned to the Rated Securities is withdrawn; or
 - (ii) if a Rated Security was an Investment Grade Security on the Date of Announcement, such Rated Security no longer is assigned an Investment Grade Rating by at least one Rating Agency; or
 - (iii) (if at the Date of Announcement no Rated Security had an Investment Grade Rating) the rating of any Rated Security is lowered one or more full rating notch by any Rating Agency (for example from BB+ to BB by S&P and Ba1 to Ba2 by Moody's or such similar lower of equivalent rating),

provided that a Rating Downgrade shall occur by virtue of a particular withdrawal of or reduction in rating if the Rating Agency withdrawing or making the reduction in the rating publicly announces or confirms in writing to the Issuer that the withdrawal or reduction was the result, in whole or in part, of the relevant Change of Control; or

- (b) if at the Date of Announcement, there are no Rated Securities and either:
 - (i) the Issuer does not use all reasonable endeavours to obtain, within 45 days of the Date of the Announcement, from a Rating Agency a rating for the Rated Securities; or
 - (ii) the Issuer does use such endeavours, but, as a result of such Change of Control, at the expiry of the Change of Control Period there are still no Investment Grade Securities and the Rating Agency announces or confirms in writing to the Issuer that its declining to assign an Investment Grade Rating was the result, in whole or in part, of the relevant Change of Control.]

§ 6

THE FISCAL AGENT, THE PAYING AGENTS AND THE CALCULATION AGENT

(1) *Appointment; Specified Offices.* The initial Fiscal Agent, Paying Agent and the initial Calculation Agent and their respective initial specified offices are:

Fiscal Agent and	Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft
Paying Agent:	Trust & Agency Services
	Taunusanlage 12
	60325 Frankfurt am Main

Federal Republic of Germany

If the Fiscal Agent is to be appointed as Calculation Agent the following applies

[The Fiscal Agent shall also act as Calculation Agent.]

If a Calculation Agent other than the Fiscal Agent is to be appointed the following applies

[The Calculation Agent and its initial specified office shall be:

Calculation Agent: **[name and specified office]**]

The Fiscal Agent, the Paying Agent and the Calculation Agent reserve the right at any time to change their respective specified offices to some other specified office in the same country.

(2) *Variation or Termination of Appointment.* The Issuer reserves the right at any time to vary or terminate the appointment of the Fiscal Agent, the Paying Agent or the Calculation Agent and to appoint another Fiscal Agent or additional or other Paying Agents, provided that, except as otherwise provided in this paragraph, no such Paying Agent shall be located in the United States or another Calculation Agent. The Issuer shall at all times maintain (i) a Fiscal Agent **[In the case of payments in U. S. dollars the following applies:**, (ii) if payments at or through the offices of all Paying Agents outside the United States (as defined in § 1(3)(b) hereof) become illegal or are effectively precluded because of the imposition of exchange controls or similar restrictions on the full payment or receipt of such amounts in United States dollars, a Paying Agent with a specified office in New York City] and [(iii)] a Calculation Agent.

Any variation, termination, appointment or change shall only take effect (other than in the case of insolvency, when it shall be of immediate effect) after not less than 30 nor more than 45 days prior notice thereof shall have been given to the Holders in accordance with [§ 13].

(3) *Agents of the Issuer.* The Fiscal Agent, the Paying Agent and the Calculation Agent act solely as agents of the Issuer and do not have any obligations towards or relationship of agency or trust to any Holder.

§ 7 TAXATION

All amounts payable in respect of the Notes shall be made at source without withholding or deduction for or on account of any present or future taxes or duties of whatever nature imposed or levied by way of withholding or deduction by or on behalf of the Federal Republic of Germany or any political subdivision or any authority thereof or therein having power to tax unless the Issuer is required by law to pay such withholding or deduction.

In such event, the Issuer will pay such additional amounts (the "**Additional Amounts**") as shall be necessary in order that the net amounts received by the Holders, after such withholding or deduction shall equal the respective amounts of principal and interest which would otherwise have been receivable in the absence of such withholding or deduction; except that no such Additional Amounts shall be payable on account of any taxes or duties which:

- (a) are payable by any person acting as custodian bank or collecting agent on behalf of a Holder, or otherwise in any manner which does not constitute a deduction or withholding by the Issuer from payments of principal or interest

made by it, or

- (b) are payable by reason of the Holder having, or having had, some personal or business connection with the Federal Republic of Germany and not merely by reason of the fact that payments in respect of the Notes are, or for purposes of taxation are deemed to be, derived from sources in, or are secured in, the Federal Republic of Germany, or
- (c) are deducted or withheld pursuant to (i) any European Union Directive or Regulation concerning the taxation of interest income, or (ii) any international treaty or understanding relating to such taxation and to which the Federal Republic of Germany or the European Union is a party, or (iii) any provision of law implementing, or complying with, or introduced to conform with, such Directive, Regulation, treaty or understanding, or
- (d) are payable by reason of a change in a law that becomes effective more than 30 days after the relevant payment of principal or interest becomes due, or is duly provided for and notice thereof is published in accordance with § 13, whichever occurs later.

The tax on interest payments ("*Zinsabschlagsteuer*", since 1 January 2009: "*Kapitalertragsteuer*") which has been in effect in the Federal Republic of Germany since 1 January 1993 and the solidarity surcharge ("*Solidaritätszuschlag*") imposed thereon as from 1 January 1995 do not constitute a tax on interest payments as described above in respect of which Additional Amounts would be payable by the Issuer.

§ 8

PRESENTATION PERIOD

The presentation period provided in § 801 paragraph 1, sentence 1 BGB (*German Civil Code*) is reduced to ten years for the Notes.

§ 9

EVENTS OF DEFAULT

- (1) *Events of default.* Each Holder shall be entitled to declare his Notes due and demand immediate redemption thereof at the Final Redemption Amount (as defined in § 5(1), together with accrued interest (if any) to the date of repayment, in the event that any of the following events (each, an "**Acceleration Event**") occurs:
- (a) the Issuer fails to pay principal or interest within 30 days from the relevant due date, or
 - (b) the Issuer fails duly to perform any other obligation arising from the Notes which failure is not capable of remedy or, if such failure is capable of remedy, such failure continues for more than 30 days after the Fiscal Agent has received notice thereof from a Holder, or
 - (c) any Capital Market Indebtedness (as defined in § 2 (2)) of the Issuer becomes prematurely repayable as a result of a default in respect of the terms thereof, or the Issuer fails to fulfil any payment obligation in excess of EUR 50,000,000 or the equivalent thereof under any Capital Market Indebtedness or under any guarantee or suretyship given for any Capital Market Indebtedness of others within 30 days from its due date or, in the case of a guarantee or suretyship, within 30 days after the guarantee or suretyship has been invoked, unless the Issuer, shall contest in good faith that such payment obligation exists or is due or that such guarantee or suretyship has been validly invoked, or if a security granted therefore is enforced on behalf of or by the creditor(s) entitled thereto, or
 - (d) the Issuer announces its inability to meet its financial obligations or ceases its payments, or
 - (e) a court opens insolvency proceedings against the Issuer, or the Issuer applies for or institutes such proceedings, or
 - (f) the Issuer goes into liquidation unless this is done in connection with a merger, or other form of combination with another company and such company

assumes all obligations contracted by the Issuer, as the case may be, in connection with this issue, or

- (g) any governmental order, decree or enactment shall be made in or by the Federal Republic of Germany whereby the Issuer is prevented from observing and performing in full its obligations as set forth in these Terms and Conditions and this situation is not cured within 90 days.

The right to declare Notes due shall terminate if the situation giving rise to it has been cured before the right is exercised.

(2) *Notice.* Any notice, including any notice declaring Notes due, in accordance with subparagraph (1) above shall be made by means of a declaration in text format (Textform, e.g. email or fax) or in written form in the German or English language delivered to the specified office of the Fiscal Agent together with proof that such Holder at the time of such notice is a Holder of the relevant Notes by means of a certificate of his Custodian (as defined in [§ 14] (3)) or in other appropriate manner.

§ 10 SUBSTITUTION

(1) *Substitution.* The Issuer may, without the consent of the Holders, if no payment of principal or interest on any of the Notes is in default, at any time substitute for the Issuer or any Subsidiary (as defined below) of its principal debtor in respect of all obligations arising from or in connection with the Notes (the "**Substitute Debtor**") provided that:

- (a) the Substituted Debtor undertakes to reimburse any Holder for such taxes, fees or duties which may be imposed upon it as a consequence of assumption of the obligations of the Issuer by the Substituted Debtor;
- (b) the Substituted Debtor assumes all obligations of the Issuer arising from or in connection with the Notes;
- (c) the Substituted Debtor is in a position to fulfil all payment obligations arising from or in connection with the Notes without the necessity of any taxes or duties being withheld at source and to transfer all amounts which are required therefore to the Fiscal Agent without any restrictions;
- (d) it is guaranteed that the Issuer irrevocably and unconditionally guarantees in favour of each Holder the payment of all sums payable by the Substitute Debtor in respect of the Notes on terms equivalent to the terms of the form of the senior guarantee of the Issuer in respect of unsubordinated Notes set out in the Agency Agreement **[If the provisions with respect to resolutions of holders are applicable, the following applies:** (whereby to this guarantee the provisions set out below in [§ 11] applicable to the Notes shall apply *mutatis mutandis*); and
- (e) there shall have been delivered to the Fiscal Agent one opinion for each jurisdiction affected of lawyers of recognised standing to the effect that subparagraphs (a), (b), (c) and (d) above have been satisfied.

For purposes of these Terms and Conditions "**Subsidiary**" shall mean any corporation or partnership in which the Issuer directly or indirectly in the aggregate holds 50 per cent. of the capital of any class or of the voting rights.

(2) *Notice.* Notice of any such substitution shall be published in accordance with [§ 13].

(3) *Change of References.* In the event of any such substitution, any reference in these Terms and Conditions to the Issuer shall from then on be deemed to refer to the Substitute Debtor and any reference to the country in which the Issuer is domiciled or resident for taxation purposes shall from then on be deemed to refer to the country of domicile or residence for taxation purposes of the Substitute Debtor. Furthermore, in the event of such substitution the following shall apply:

- (a) in § 7 and § 5 (2) an alternative reference to the Federal Republic of Germany shall be deemed to have been included in addition to the reference according to the preceding sentence to the country of domicile or residence for taxation

If the Notes provide for Resolutions of Holders the following applies

purposes of the Substitute Debtor; and

- (b) in §9(1)(c) to (g) an alternative reference to the Issuer in its capacity as guarantor shall be deemed to have been included in addition to the reference to the Substitute Debtor.

**[§ 11
AMENDMENT OF THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS, HOLDERS'
REPRESENTATIVE**

(1) *Amendment of the Terms and Conditions.* In accordance with the Act on Debt Securities of 2009 (*Schuldverschreibungsgesetz aus Gesamtemissionen – "SchVG"*) the Holders may agree with the Issuer on amendments of the Terms and Conditions with regard to matters permitted by the SchVG by resolution with the majority specified in subparagraph (2). Majority resolutions shall be binding on all Holders. Resolutions which do not provide for identical conditions for all Holders are void, unless Holders who are disadvantaged have expressly consented to their being treated disadvantageously.

(2) *Majority.* Resolutions shall be passed by a majority of not less than 75 per cent. of the votes cast. Resolutions relating to amendments of the Terms and Conditions which are not material and which do not relate to the matters listed in § 5 paragraph 3, Nos. 1 to 8 of the SchVG require a simple majority of the votes cast.

(3) *Resolution of Holders.* Resolutions of Holders shall be passed at the election of the Issuer by vote taken without a meeting in accordance with § 18 SchVG or in a Holder's meeting in accordance with § 9 SchVG

(4) *Chair of the vote.* The vote will be chaired by a notary appointed by the Issuer or, if the Holders' Representative (as defined below) has convened the vote, by the Holders' Representative.

(5) *Voting rights.* Each Holder participating in any vote shall cast votes in accordance with the principal amount or the notional share of its entitlement to the outstanding Notes.

(6) *Holdings' Representative.*

[If no Holders' Representative is designated in the Terms and Conditions, the following applies: The Holders may by majority resolution appoint a common representative (the "**Holdings' Representative**") to exercise the Holders' rights on behalf of each Holder.]

[If the Holders' Representative is appointed in the Terms and Conditions, the following applies: The common representative (the "**Holdings' Representative**") shall be [**Holdings' Representative**]. The liability of the Holders' Representative shall be limited to ten times the amount of its annual remuneration, unless the Holders' Representative has acted willfully or with gross negligence.]

The Holders' Representative shall have the duties and powers provided by law or granted by majority resolution of the Holders. The Holders' Representative shall comply with the instructions of the Holders. To the extent that the Holders' Representative has been authorised to assert certain rights of the Holders, the Holders shall not be entitled to assert such rights themselves, unless explicitly provided for in the relevant majority resolution. The Holders' Representative shall provide reports to the Holders on its activities. The regulations of the SchVG apply with regard to the recall and the other rights and obligations of the Holders' Representative.]

**§ [12]
FURTHER ISSUES, PURCHASES AND CANCELLATION**

(1) *Further Issues.* The Issuer may from time to time, without the consent of the Holders, issue further Notes having the same terms and conditions as the Notes in all respects (or in all respects except for the issue date, interest commencement

date and/or issue price) so as to form a single Series with the Notes.

(2) *Purchases.* The Issuer may at any time purchase Notes in the open market or otherwise and at any price. Notes purchased by the Issuer may, at the option of the Issuer, be held, resold or surrendered to the Fiscal Agent for cancellation. If purchases are made by public tender, such tender for Notes must be made available to all Holders alike.

(3) *Cancellation.* All Notes redeemed in full shall be cancelled forthwith and may not be reissued or resold.

§ [13] NOTICES

In the case of Notes which are listed on the official list of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange the following applies

[(1) *Publication.* All notices concerning the Notes will be made by means of electronic publication on the internet website of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange (www.bourse.lu). Any notice so given will be deemed to have been validly given on the third day following the date of such publication.

(2) *Notification to Clearing System.*

So long as any Notes are listed on the Luxembourg Stock Exchange, subparagraph (1) shall apply. In the case of notices regarding the Rate of Interest or, if the Rules of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange otherwise so permit, the Issuer may deliver the relevant notice to the Clearing System for communication by the Clearing System to the Holders, in lieu of publication as set forth in subparagraph (1) above; any such notice shall be deemed to have been validly given on the seventh day after the day on which the said notice was given to the Clearing System.]

In the case of Notes which are unlisted the following applies

[(1) *Notification to Clearing System.* The Issuer shall deliver all notices concerning the Notes to the Clearing System for communication by the Clearing System to the Holders. Any such notice shall be deemed to have been validly given on the seventh day after the day on which the said notice was given to the Clearing System.]

[(2)][(3)] *Form of Notice.* Notices to be given by any Holder shall be made by means of a declaration in text format (Textform, e.g. email or fax) or in written form to be sent together with the evidence of the Holder's entitlement in accordance with § [14] (3) to the Fiscal Agent. Such notice may be given through the Clearing System in such manner as the Fiscal Agent and the Clearing System may approve for such purpose.

§ [14] APPLICABLE LAW, PLACE OF JURISDICTION AND ENFORCEMENT

(1) *Applicable Law.* The Notes, as to form and content, and all rights and obligations of the Holders and the Issuer, shall be governed by German law.

(2) *Submission to Jurisdiction.* The District Court (*Landgericht*) in Frankfurt am Main shall have non-exclusive jurisdiction for any action or other legal proceedings ("**Proceedings**") arising out of or in connection with the Notes

(3) *Enforcement.* Any Holder of Notes may in any Proceedings against the Issuer, or to which such Holder and the Issuer are parties, protect and enforce in his own name his rights arising under such Notes on the basis of (i) a statement issued by the Custodian with whom such Holder maintains a securities account in respect of the Notes (a) stating the full name and address of the Holder, (b) specifying the aggregate principal amount of Notes credited to such securities account on the date of such statement and (c) confirming that the Custodian has given written notice to the Clearing System containing the information pursuant to (a) and (b) and (ii) a copy of the Note in global form certified as being a true copy by a duly authorised

officer of the Clearing System or a depository of the Clearing System, without the need for production in such Proceedings of the actual records or the global note representing the Notes. For purposes of the foregoing, "**Custodian**" means any bank or other financial institution of recognised standing authorised to engage in securities custody business with which the Holder maintains a securities account in respect of the Notes and includes the Clearing System. Each Holder may, without prejudice to the foregoing, protect and enforce his rights under these Notes also in any other manner permitted in the country of the proceedings.

**§ [15]
LANGUAGE**

If the Terms and Conditions are to be in the German language with an English language translation the following applies

[These Terms and Conditions are written in the German language and provided with an English language translation. The German text shall be controlling and binding. The English language translation is provided for convenience only.]

If the Terms and Conditions are to be in the English language with a German language translation the following applies

[These Terms and Conditions are written in the English language and provided with a German language translation. The English text shall be controlling and binding. The German language translation is provided for convenience only.]

If the Terms and Conditions are to be in the German language only the following applies

[These Terms and Conditions are written in the German language only.]

If the Terms and Conditions are to be in the English language only the following applies

[These Terms and Conditions are written in the English language only.]

In the case of Notes which are to be publicly offered, in whole or in part, in

[Eine deutsche Übersetzung der Anleihebedingungen wird bei der Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA, Carl-Bertelsmann-Straße 270, 33311 Gütersloh, Federal Republic of Germany, zur kostenlosen Ausgabe bereitgehalten.]

***Germany or distributed, in whole or in part, to non-qualified investors in Germany with English language
Conditions the following applies***

TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE NOTES – GERMAN LANGUAGE VERSION

- (DEUTSCHE FASSUNG DER ANLEIHEBEDINGUNGEN) -

Einführung Die Anleihebedingungen für die Schuldverschreibungen (die "**Anleihebedingungen**") sind nachfolgend in zwei Optionen aufgeführt:

Option I umfasst den Satz der Anleihebedingungen, der auf Tranchen von Schuldverschreibungen mit fester Verzinsung Anwendung findet.

Option II umfasst den Satz der Anleihebedingungen, der auf Tranchen von Schuldverschreibungen mit variabler Verzinsung Anwendung findet.

Der Satz von Anleihebedingungen für jede dieser Optionen enthält bestimmte weitere Optionen, die entsprechend gekennzeichnet sind, indem die jeweilige optionale Bestimmung durch Instruktionen und Erklärungen entweder links von dem Satz der Anleihebedingungen oder in eckigen Klammern innerhalb des Satzes der Anleihebedingungen bezeichnet wird.

In den Endgültigen Bedingungen wird die Emittentin festlegen, welche der Option I oder Option II (einschließlich der jeweils enthaltenen bestimmten weiteren Optionen) für die einzelne Emission von Schuldverschreibungen Anwendung findet, indem entweder die betreffenden Angaben wiederholt werden oder auf die betreffenden Optionen verwiesen wird.

Soweit die Emittentin zum Zeitpunkt der Billigung des Prospektes keine Kenntnis von bestimmten Angaben hatte, die auf eine einzelne Emission von Schuldverschreibungen anwendbar sind, enthält dieser Prospekt Leerstellen in eckigen Klammern, die die maßgeblichen durch die Endgültigen Bedingungen zu vervollständigenden Angaben enthalten.

Im Fall, dass die Endgültigen Bedingungen, die für eine einzelne Emission anwendbar sind, nur auf die weiteren Optionen verweisen, die im Satz der Anleihebedingungen der Option I oder Option II enthalten sind, ist folgendes anwendbar

[Die Bestimmungen der nachstehenden Anleihebedingungen gelten für diese Schuldverschreibungen so, wie sie durch die Angaben der beigefügten endgültigen Bedingungen (die "**Endgültigen Bedingungen**") vervollständigt werden. Die Leerstellen in den auf die Schuldverschreibungen anwendbaren Bestimmungen dieser Anleihebedingungen gelten als durch die in den Endgültigen Bedingungen enthaltenen Angaben ausgefüllt, als ob die Leerstellen in den betreffenden Bestimmungen durch diese Angaben ausgefüllt wären; alternative oder wählbare Bestimmungen dieser Anleihebedingungen, deren Entsprechungen in den Endgültigen Bedingungen nicht ausdrücklich ausgefüllt oder die gestrichen sind, gelten als aus diesen Anleihebedingungen gestrichen; sämtliche auf die Schuldverschreibungen nicht anwendbaren Bestimmungen dieser Anleihebedingungen (einschließlich der Anweisungen, Anmerkungen und der Texte in eckigen Klammern) gelten als aus diesen Anleihebedingungen gestrichen, so dass die Bestimmungen der Endgültigen Bedingungen Geltung erhalten. Kopien der Endgültigen Bedingungen sind kostenlos bei der bezeichneten Geschäftsstelle der Emissionsstelle und bei den bezeichneten Geschäftsstellen jeder zusätzlichen Zahlstelle, sofern vorhanden, erhältlich; bei nicht an einer Börse notierten Schuldverschreibungen sind Kopien der betreffenden Endgültigen Bedingungen allerdings ausschließlich für die Gläubiger solcher Schuldverschreibungen erhältlich.]

OPTION I – Anleihebedingungen für Schuldverschreibungen mit fester Verzinsung

ANLEIHEBEDINGUNGEN DER SCHULDVERSCHREIBUNGEN - (DEUTSCHE FASSUNG) -

§ 1

WÄHRUNG, STÜCKELUNG, FORM, DEFINITIONEN

(1) *Währung; Stückelung.* Diese Serie der Schuldverschreibungen (die "**Schuldverschreibungen**") der Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA (die "**Emittentin**")

wird in **[festgelegte Währung]** (die "**festgelegte Währung**") im Gesamtnennbetrag von **[Falls die Globalurkunde eine NGN ist, ist folgendes anwendbar: (vorbehaltlich § 1(4)) [Gesamtnennbetrag]** (in Worten: **[Gesamtnennbetrag in Worten]**) in einer Stückelung von **[festgelegte Stückelung]** (die "**festgelegte Stückelung**") begeben.

(2) *Form.* Die Schuldverschreibungen lauten auf den Inhaber und sind durch eine oder mehrere Globalurkunden verbrieft (jeweils eine "**Globalurkunde**").

(3) *Vorläufige Globalurkunde – Austausch.*

(a) Die Schuldverschreibungen sind anfänglich durch eine vorläufige Globalurkunde (die "**vorläufige Globalurkunde**") ohne Zinsscheine verbrieft. Die vorläufige Globalurkunde wird gegen Schuldverschreibungen in der festgelegten Stückelung, die durch eine Dauerglobalurkunde (die "**Dauerglobalurkunde**") ohne Zinsscheine verbrieft sind, ausgetauscht. Die vorläufige Globalurkunde und die Dauerglobalurkunde tragen jeweils die Unterschriften ordnungsgemäß bevollmächtigter Vertreter der Emittentin und sind mit einer Kontrollunterschrift versehen. Einzelurkunden und Zinsscheine werden nicht ausgegeben.

(b) Die vorläufige Globalurkunde wird frühestens an einem Tag (der "**Austauschtag**") gegen die Dauerglobalurkunde austauschbar, der 40 Tage nach dem Tag der Ausgabe der vorläufigen Globalurkunde liegt. Ein solcher Austausch soll nur nach Vorlage von Bescheinigungen gemäß U.S. Steuerrecht erfolgen, wonach der oder die wirtschaftlichen Eigentümer der durch die vorläufige Globalurkunde verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen keine US-Personen sind (ausgenommen bestimmte Finanzinstitute oder bestimmte Personen, die Schuldverschreibungen über solche Finanzinstitute halten). Zinszahlungen auf durch eine Vorläufige Globalurkunde verbriefte Schuldverschreibungen erfolgen erst nach Vorlage solcher Bescheinigungen. Eine gesonderte Bescheinigung ist hinsichtlich einer jeden solchen Zinszahlung erforderlich. Jede Bescheinigung, die am oder nach dem 40. Tag nach dem Tag der Ausgabe der Vorläufigen Globalurkunde eingeht, wird als ein Ersuchen behandelt werden, diese vorläufige Globalurkunde gemäß diesem Absatz (b) dieses § 1 (3) auszutauschen. Wertpapiere, die im Austausch für die vorläufige Globalurkunde geliefert werden, sind nur außerhalb der Vereinigten Staaten zu liefern (wie in § 4 (3) definiert).

(4) *Clearingsystem.* Die Globalurkunde, die die Schuldverschreibungen verbrieft, wird von einem oder für ein Clearingsystem verwahrt. "**Clearingsystem**" bedeutet **[Bei mehr als einem Clearingsystem ist folgendes anwendbar: jeweils]** folgendes: [Clearstream Banking AG, Neue Börsenstraße 1, 60487 Frankfurt am Main, Bundesrepublik Deutschland ("**CBF**")] [Clearstream Banking société anonyme, 42 Avenue JF Kennedy, 1855 Luxemburg, Großherzogtum Luxemburg ("**CBL**"), Euroclear Bank SA/NV, Boulevard du Roi Albert II, 1210 Brüssel, Belgien ("**Euroclear**"), (CBL und Euroclear jeweils ein "**ICSD**" und zusammen die "**ICSDs**")] und jeder Funktionsnachfolger.

[Die Schuldverschreibungen werden in Form einer New Global Note ("**NGN**") ausgegeben und von einem common safekeeper im Namen beider ICSDs verwahrt.

Der Gesamtnennbetrag der durch die Globalurkunde verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen entspricht dem jeweils in den Registern beider ICSDs eingetragenen Gesamtbetrag. Die Register der ICSDs (unter denen die Register zu verstehen sind, die jeder ICSD für seine Kunden über den Betrag ihres Anteils an den Schuldverschreibungen führt) sind maßgeblicher Nachweis des Gesamtnennbetrages der durch die Globalurkunde verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen, und eine zu diesen Zwecken von einem ICSD jeweils ausgestellte Bescheinigung mit dem Betrag der so verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen ist maßgebliche Bestätigung des Inhalts des Registers des betreffenden ICSD zu dem fraglichen Zeitpunkt.

Bei jeder Rückzahlung oder einer Zinszahlung auf die durch die Globalurkunde verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen bzw. beim Kauf und der Entwertung der durch die Globalurkunde verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen stellt die Emittentin sicher,

Im Fall von Schuldverschreibungen, die im Namen der ICSDs verwahrt werden und die Globalurkunde eine NGN ist, ist folgendes anwendbar

dass die Einzelheiten der Rückzahlung, Zahlung oder des Kaufs und der Entwertung bezüglich der Globalurkunde *pro rata* in die Unterlagen der ICSDs eingetragen werden, und dass, nach dieser Eintragung, vom Gesamtnennbetrag der in die Register der ICSDs aufgenommenen und durch die Globalurkunde verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen der Gesamtnennbetrag der zurückgekauften bzw. gekauften und entwerteten Schuldverschreibungen abgezogen wird.]

[Falls die vorläufige Globalurkunde eine NGN ist, ist folgendes anwendbar: Bei Austausch nur eines Teils von Schuldverschreibungen, die durch eine vorläufige Globalurkunde verbrieft sind, wird die Emittentin sicherstellen, dass die Einzelheiten dieses Austauschs *pro rata* in die Register der ICSDs aufgenommen werden.]

Im Fall von Schuldverschreibungen, die im Namen der ICSDs verwahrt werden und die Globalurkunde eine CGN ist, ist folgendes anwendbar

[Die Schuldverschreibungen werden in Form einer Classical Global Note ("**CGN**") ausgegeben und von einer gemeinsamen Verwahrstelle im Namen beider ICSDs verwahrt.]

Falls § 11 über Änderung der Anleihebedingungen und den Gemeinsamen Vertreter gilt, ist folgendes anwendbar

(5) *Gläubiger von Schuldverschreibungen.* "**Gläubiger**" bedeutet jeder Inhaber eines Miteigentumsanteils oder anderen Rechts an den Schuldverschreibungen.

[(6) *In Bezug genommene Bedingungen.* Die Bestimmungen gemäß Schedule 5 des Geänderten und Neugefassten Emissions- und Zahlstellenvertrages vom 18. April 2018 (das "**Agency Agreement**") zwischen der Emittentin und Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft als Emissions- und Zahlstelle (einsehbar unter www.bourse.lu), die überwiegend das für Gläubigerversammlungen oder Abstimmungen der Gläubiger ohne Versammlung zu wählende Verfahren betreffen, sind in vollem Umfang durch diese Anleihebedingungen in Bezug genommen.]

§ 2

STATUS, NEGATIVVERPFLICHTUNG

(1) *Status.* Die Schuldverschreibungen begründen nicht besicherte und nicht nachrangige Verbindlichkeiten der Emittentin, die untereinander und mit allen anderen nicht besicherten und nicht nachrangigen Verbindlichkeiten der Emittentin gleichrangig sind mit Ausnahme von Verbindlichkeiten, die nach geltenden Rechtsvorschriften vorrangig sind.

(2) *Negativverpflichtung.* Die Emittentin verpflichtet sich solange eine Schuldverschreibung noch aussteht (aber nur bis zu dem Zeitpunkt, in dem alle Beträge von Kapital und Zinsen der Emissionsstelle zur Verfügung gestellt worden sind), weder ihr gesamtes noch einen Teil ihres gegenwärtigen oder zukünftigen Vermögens mit Pfandrechten, Rechten aus Abtretung oder Übertragung, Hypotheken oder Grundpfandrechten oder sonstigen Sicherungsrechten zur Besicherung einer gegenwärtigen oder zukünftigen Kapitalmarktverbindlichkeit (wie nachstehend definiert), die von der Emittentin (oder einer anderen Person) eingegangen oder garantiert ist, zu belasten oder solche Rechte zu diesem Zweck bestehen zu lassen, ohne gleichzeitig die Gläubiger an derselben Sicherheit in gleicher Weise und anteilmäßig teilnehmen zu lassen. Diese Verpflichtung findet jedoch keine Anwendung in Bezug auf Sicherungsrechte, die auf einem Vermögensgegenstand zum Zeitpunkt des Erwerbs durch die Emittentin lasten.

Für die Zwecke dieser Bedingungen bezeichnet "**Kapitalmarktverbindlichkeit**" jede Verbindlichkeit hinsichtlich der Rückzahlung geliehener Geldbeträge, die durch Schuldscheine oder durch Schuldverschreibungen oder sonstige Wertpapiere, die an einer Börse oder an einem anderen anerkannten Wertpapiermarkt notiert oder gehandelt werden oder werden können, verbrieft, verkörpert oder dokumentiert sind.

§ 3 ZINSEN

(1) *Zinssatz und Zinszahlungstage.* Die Schuldverschreibungen werden bezogen auf ihren Gesamtnennbetrag verzinst, und zwar vom **[Verzinsungsbeginn]** (einschließlich) bis zum Fälligkeitstag (wie in § 5 (1) definiert) (ausschließlich) mit jährlich **[Zinssatz]**%. Die Zinsen sind nachträglich am **[Festzinstermine]** eines jeden Jahres zahlbar (jeweils ein "Zinszahlungstag"). Die erste Zinszahlung erfolgt am **[erster Zinszahlungstag]** **[Sofern der erste Zinszahlungstag nicht der erste Jahrestag des Verzinsungsbeginns ist ist folgendes anwendbar: und beläuft sich auf [anfänglicher Bruchteilszinsbetrag pro festgelegter Stückelung] je festgelegter Stückelung. [Sofern der Fälligkeitstag kein Festzinstermine ist, ist folgendes anwendbar: Die Zinsen für den Zeitraum vom [der letzte dem Fälligkeitstag vorausgehende Festzinstermine] (einschließlich) bis zum Fälligkeitstag (ausschließlich) belaufen sich auf [abschließender Bruchteilszinsbetrag pro festgelegte Stückelung] je festgelegter Stückelung].**

(2) *Auflaufende Zinsen.* Der Zinslauf der Schuldverschreibungen endet mit Ablauf des Tages, der dem Tag vorangeht, an dem sie zur Rückzahlung fällig werden. Falls die Emittentin die Schuldverschreibungen bei Fälligkeit nicht einlöst, endet die Verzinsung des ausstehenden Gesamtnennbetrages der Schuldverschreibungen nicht am Tag der Fälligkeit, sondern erst mit Ablauf des Tages, der dem Tag der tatsächlichen Rückzahlung der Schuldverschreibungen vorangeht. Die Verzinsung des ausstehenden Gesamtnennbetrages vom Tag der Fälligkeit an (einschließlich) bis zum Tag der Rückzahlung der Schuldverschreibungen (ausschließlich) erfolgt zum gesetzlich festgelegten Satz für Verzugszinsen¹.

(3) *Berechnung der Zinsen für Teile von Zeiträumen.* Sofern Zinsen für einen Zeitraum von weniger als einem Jahr zu berechnen sind, erfolgt die Berechnung auf der Grundlage des Zinstagequotienten (wie nachstehend definiert).

(4) *Zinstagequotient.* "Zinstagequotient" bezeichnet im Hinblick auf die Berechnung des Zinsbetrages auf eine Schuldverschreibung für einen beliebigen Zeitraum (der "Zinsberechnungszeitraum"):

Im Falle von Actual/Actual (ICMA Regel 251) mit jährlichen Zinszahlungen (ausschließlich dem Fall eines ersten oder letzten kurzen oder langen Kupons) ist folgendes anwendbar

[die tatsächliche Anzahl von Tagen im Zinsberechnungszeitraum, dividiert durch die tatsächliche Anzahl von Tagen im jeweiligen Zinsjahr.]

Im Fall von Actual/Actual (ICMA Regel 251) mit jährlichen Zinszahlungen

[die Anzahl von Tagen in dem Zinsberechnungszeitraum, geteilt durch die Anzahl der Tage in der Bezugsperiode, in die der Zinsberechnungszeitraum fällt.]

¹ Der gesetzliche Verzugszinssatz beträgt für das Jahr fünf Prozentpunkte über dem von der Deutsche Bundesbank von Zeit zu Zeit veröffentlichten Basiszinssatz, §§ 288 Absatz 1, 247 BGB.

(einschließlich dem Fall eines ersten oder letzten kurzen Kupons) ist folgendes anwendbar

Im Falle von Actual/Actual (ICMA Regel 251) mit zwei oder mehr gleich bleibenden Zinsperioden (einschließlich dem Fall eines ersten oder letzten kurzen Kupons) innerhalb eines Zinsjahres ist folgendes anwendbar

Im Fall von Actual/Actual (ICMA Regel 251) und wenn der Zinsberechnungszeitraum länger ist als eine Bezugsperiode (langer Kupon) ist folgendes anwendbar

Folgendes gilt für alle Optionen von Actual/Actual (ICMA) außer Option Actual/Actual (ICMA Rule 251) mit jährlichen Zinszahlungen (ausschließlich dem Fall eines

[die Anzahl von Tagen in dem Zinsberechnungszeitraum, geteilt durch das Produkt aus (1) der Anzahl der Tage in der Bezugsperiode, in die der Zinsberechnungszeitraum fällt, und (2) der Anzahl von Zinszahlungstagen, die angenommen, dass Zinsen für das gesamte Jahr zu zahlen wären in ein Kalenderjahr fallen oder fallen würden.]

[die Summe aus:

- (a) der Anzahl von Tagen in dem Zinsberechnungszeitraum, die in die Bezugsperiode fallen, in welcher der Zinsberechnungszeitraum beginnt, geteilt durch **[Im Fall von Bezugsperioden, die kürzer sind als ein Jahr, ist folgendes anwendbar:** das Produkt aus (x) [die] [der] Anzahl der Tage in dieser Bezugsperiode **[Im Fall von Bezugsperioden, die kürzer sind als ein Jahr, ist folgendes anwendbar:** und (y) der Anzahl von Bezugsperioden, die in ein Kalenderjahr fallen oder fallen würden, falls Zinsen für das gesamte Jahr zu zahlen wären]; und
- (b) der Anzahl von Tagen in dem Zinsberechnungszeitraum, die in die nächste Bezugsperiode fallen, geteilt durch **[Im Fall von Bezugsperioden, die kürzer sind als ein Jahr, ist folgendes anwendbar:** das Produkt aus (x) [die] [der] Anzahl der Tage in dieser Bezugsperiode **[Im Fall von Bezugsperioden, die kürzer sind als ein Jahr, ist folgendes anwendbar:** und (y) der Anzahl von Bezugsperioden, die in ein Kalenderjahr fallen oder fallen würden, falls Zinsen für das gesamte Jahr zu zahlen wären].]

["Bezugsperiode" bezeichnet den Zeitraum ab dem Verzinsungsbeginn (einschließlich) bis zum ersten Zinszahlungstag (ausschließlich) oder von jedem Zinszahlungstag (einschließlich) bis zum nächsten Zinszahlungstag (ausschließlich). **[Im Fall eines ersten oder letzten kurzen Zinsberechnungszeitraumes ist folgendes anwendbar:** Zum Zwecke der Bestimmung der maßgeblichen Bezugsperiode gilt der **[Fiktive Zinszahlungstag]** als Zinszahlungstag.] **[Im Fall eines ersten oder letzten langen Zinsberechnungszeitraumes ist folgendes anwendbar:** Zum Zwecke der Bestimmung der maßgeblichen Bezugsperiode gelten der **[Fiktiver Zinszahlungstag]** als Zinszahlungstage.]

ersten oder
letzten kurzen
oder langen
Kupons)

Im Falle von
30/360, 360/360
oder Bond
Basis ist
folgendes
anwendbar

[die Anzahl von Tagen im Zinsberechnungszeitraum dividiert durch 360, wobei die Anzahl der Tage auf der Grundlage eines Jahres von 360 Tagen mit zwölf Monaten zu je 30 Tagen zu ermitteln ist (es sei denn, (A) der letzte Tag des Zinsberechnungszeitraums fällt auf den 31. Tag eines Monats, während der erste Tag des Zinsberechnungszeitraumes weder auf den 30. noch auf den 31. Tag eines Monats fällt, wobei in diesem Fall der diesen Tag enthaltende Monat nicht als ein auf 30 Tage gekürzter Monat zu behandeln ist, oder (B) der letzte Tag des Zinsberechnungszeitraumes fällt auf den letzten Tag des Monats Februar, wobei in diesem Fall der Monat Februar nicht als ein auf 30 Tage verlängerter Monat zu behandeln ist).]

Im Falle von
30E/360 oder
Eurobond
Basis ist
folgendes
anwendbar

[die Anzahl der Tage im Zinsberechnungszeitraum dividiert durch 360 (dabei ist die Anzahl der Tage auf der Grundlage eines Jahres von 360 Tagen mit 12 Monaten zu 30 Tagen zu ermitteln, und zwar ohne Berücksichtigung des ersten oder letzten Tages des Zinsberechnungszeitraumes, es sei denn, dass im Falle einer am Fälligkeitstag endenden Zinsperiode der Fälligkeitstag der letzte Tag des Monats Februar ist, in welchem Fall der Monat Februar als nicht auf einen Monat zu 30 Tagen verlängert gilt).]

§ 4

ZAHLUNGEN

(1) (a) *Zahlungen auf Kapital.* Zahlungen auf Kapital in Bezug auf die Schuldverschreibungen erfolgen nach Maßgabe des nachstehenden Absatzes 2 an das Clearingsystem oder dessen Order zur Gutschrift auf den Konten der jeweiligen Kontoinhaber des Clearingsystems außerhalb der Vereinigten Staaten.

(b) *Zahlung von Zinsen.* Die Zahlung von Zinsen auf Schuldverschreibungen erfolgt nach Maßgabe von Absatz 2 an das Clearingsystem oder dessen Order zur Gutschrift auf den Konten der jeweiligen Kontoinhaber des Clearingsystems.

Die Zahlung von Zinsen auf Schuldverschreibungen, die durch die vorläufige Globalurkunde verbrieft sind, erfolgt nach Maßgabe von Absatz 2 an das Clearingsystem oder dessen Order zur Gutschrift auf den Konten der jeweiligen Kontoinhaber des Clearingsystems, und zwar nach ordnungsgemäßer Bescheinigung gemäß § 1(3)(b).

(2) *Zahlungsweise.* Vorbehaltlich (i) geltender steuerlicher und sonstiger gesetzlicher Regelungen und Vorschriften und (ii) eines Einbehalts oder Abzugs aufgrund eines Vertrags wie in Section 1471(b) des U.S. Internal Revenue Code von 1986 (der "Code") beschrieben bzw. anderweit gemäß Section 1471 bis Section 1474 des Code auferlegt, etwaigen aufgrund dessen getroffener Regelungen oder geschlossener Abkommen, etwaiger offizieller Auslegungen davon, oder von Gesetzen zur Umsetzung einer Regierungszusammenarbeit dazu erfolgen zu leistende Zahlungen auf die Schuldverschreibungen in der festgelegten Währung.

(3) *Vereinigte Staaten.* Für die Zwecke des § 1 (3) und dieses § 4 und § 6 (2) bezeichnet "**Vereinigte Staaten**" die Vereinigten Staaten von Amerika (einschließlich deren Bundesstaaten und des District of Columbia) sowie deren Territorien (einschließlich Puerto Rico, der U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, Wake Island und Northern Mariana Islands).

(4) *Erfüllung.* Die Emittentin wird durch Leistung der Zahlung an das Clearingsystem oder dessen Order von ihrer Zahlungspflicht befreit.

(5) *Zahltag.* Fällt der Fälligkeitstag einer Zahlung in Bezug auf eine Schuldverschreibung auf einen Tag, der kein Zahltag ist, dann hat der Gläubiger keinen Anspruch auf Zahlung vor dem nächsten Zahltag am jeweiligen Geschäftsort.

Der Gläubiger ist nicht berechtigt, weitere Zinsen oder sonstige Zahlungen aufgrund dieser Verspätung zu verlangen.

Für diese Zwecke bezeichnet "**Zahltag**" einen Tag (außer einem Samstag oder Sonntag),

Bei nicht auf Euro lautenden Schuldverschreibungen, ist folgendes anwendbar

[an dem Geschäftsbanken und Devisenmärkte Zahlungen in **[relevante(s) Finanzzentrum(en)]** abwickeln] [.] [und]]

Im Fall, dass das Clearingsystem und TARGET offen sein sollen, ist folgendes anwendbar

[an dem alle betroffenen Bereiche des Trans-European Automated Real-time Gross Settlement Express Transfer System 2 ("**TARGET**") und das betreffende Clearingsystem geöffnet sind, um die betreffenden Zahlungen weiterzuleiten.]

(6) *Bezugnahmen auf Kapital und Zinsen.* Bezugnahmen in diesen Anleihebedingungen auf Kapital der Schuldverschreibungen schließen, soweit anwendbar, die folgenden Beträge ein: den Rückzahlungsbetrag der Schuldverschreibungen; **[Falls die Emittentin das Wahlrecht hat, die Schuldverschreibungen aus anderen als steuerlichen Gründen vorzeitig zurückzahlen, ist folgendes anwendbar:** den Wahl-Rückzahlungsbetrag der Schuldverschreibungen;] **[Falls der Gläubiger ein Wahlrecht hat, die Schuldverschreibungen vorzeitig zu kündigen, ist folgendes anwendbar:** der Wahl-Rückzahlungsbetrag der Schuldverschreibungen;] sowie jeden Aufschlag sowie sonstige auf oder in Bezug auf die Schuldverschreibungen zahlbaren Beträge. Bezugnahmen in diesen Anleihebedingungen auf Zinsen auf Schuldverschreibungen sollen, soweit anwendbar, sämtliche gemäß § 7 zahlbaren zusätzlichen Beträge einschließen.

(7) *Hinterlegung von Kapital und Zinsen.* Die Emittentin ist berechtigt, beim Amtsgericht Frankfurt am Main Zins- oder Kapitalbeträge zu hinterlegen, die von den Gläubigern nicht innerhalb von zwölf Monaten nach dem Fälligkeitstag beansprucht worden sind, auch wenn die Gläubiger sich nicht in Annahmeverzug befinden. Soweit eine solche Hinterlegung erfolgt, und auf das Recht der Rücknahme verzichtet wird, erlöschen die Ansprüche der Gläubiger gegen die Emittentin.

§ 5 RÜCKZAHLUNG

(1) *Rückzahlung bei Endfälligkeit.* Soweit nicht zuvor bereits ganz oder teilweise zurückgezahlt oder angekauft und entwertet, werden die Schuldverschreibungen zu ihrem Rückzahlungsbetrag am **[Fälligkeitstag]** (der "**Fälligkeitstag**") zurückgezahlt. Der Rückzahlungsbetrag ("**Rückzahlungsbetrag**") in Bezug auf jede Schuldverschreibung entspricht dem Nennbetrag der Schuldverschreibungen.

(2) *Vorzeitige Rückzahlung aus steuerlichen Gründen.* Die Schuldverschreibungen können insgesamt, jedoch nicht teilweise, nach Wahl der Emittentin mit einer Kündigungsfrist von nicht weniger als 30 und nicht mehr als 60 Tagen gegenüber der Emissionsstelle und gemäß [§ 13] gegenüber den Gläubigern vorzeitig gekündigt und zu ihrem Rückzahlungsbetrag zuzüglich bis zum für die Rückzahlung festgesetzten Tag aufgelaufener Zinsen zurückgezahlt werden, falls die Emittentin als Folge einer Änderung oder Ergänzung der Steuer- oder Abgabengesetze und -vorschriften der Bundesrepublik Deutschland oder deren politischen Untergliederungen oder Steuerbehörden oder als Folge einer Änderung oder Ergänzung der Anwendung oder der offiziellen Auslegung dieser Gesetze und Vorschriften (vorausgesetzt diese Änderung oder Ergänzung wird am oder nach dem Tag, an dem die letzte Tranche dieser Serie von Schuldverschreibungen begeben wird wirksam) am nächstfolgenden Zinszahlungstag (wie in § 3 (1)

definiert) zur Zahlung von zusätzlichen Beträgen (wie in § 7 dieser Bedingungen definiert) verpflichtet sein wird und diese Verpflichtung nicht durch das Ergreifen vernünftiger der Emittentin zur Verfügung stehender Maßnahmen vermieden werden kann.

Eine solche Kündigung darf allerdings nicht (i) früher als 90 Tage vor dem frühestmöglichen Termin erfolgen, an dem die Emittentin verpflichtet wäre, solche zusätzlichen Beträge zu zahlen, falls eine Zahlung auf die Schuldverschreibungen dann fällig sein würde, oder (ii) erfolgen, wenn zu dem Zeitpunkt, zu dem die Kündigung erfolgt, die Verpflichtung zur Zahlung von zusätzlichen Beträgen nicht mehr wirksam ist.

Eine solche Kündigung hat gemäß [§ 13] zu erfolgen. Sie ist unwiderruflich, muss den für die Rückzahlung festgelegten Termin nennen und eine zusammenfassende Erklärung enthalten, welche die das Rückzahlungsrecht der Emittentin begründenden Umstände darlegt.

Falls die Emittentin das Wahlrecht hat, die Schuldverschreibungen vorzeitig zu festgelegtem(n) Wahlrückzahlungsbetrag/-beträgen (Call) zurückzahlen, ist folgendes anwendbar

[(3) *Vorzeitige Rückzahlung nach Wahl der Emittentin.*

(a) Die Emittentin kann, nachdem sie gemäß Absatz (b) gekündigt hat, die Schuldverschreibungen insgesamt oder teilweise innerhalb des Wahl-Rückzahlungszeitraumes (Call) zum/zu den Wahl-Rückzahlungsbetrag/-beträgen, wie nachstehend angegeben, nebst etwaigen bis zum letzten Tag des Wahl-Rückzahlungszeitraumes (Call) (ausschließlich) aufgelaufenen Zinsen zurückzahlen.

Wahl-Rückzahlungszeitraum(räume) Call	Wahl-Rückzahlungsbetrag /beträge Call
[Wahl-Rückzahlungszeitraum(räume)]	[Wahl-Rückzahlungsbetrag /beträge]
[]	[]
[]	[]

[Falls der Gläubiger ein Wahlrecht hat, die Schuldverschreibungen vorzeitig zu kündigen, ist folgendes anwendbar: Der Emittentin steht dieses Wahlrecht nicht in Bezug auf eine Schuldverschreibung zu, deren Rückzahlung bereits der Gläubiger in Ausübung seines Wahlrechts nach Absatz [(4)] dieses § 5 verlangt hat.]

(b) Die Kündigung ist den Gläubigern der Schuldverschreibungen durch die Emittentin gemäß [§ 13] bekannt zu geben. Sie beinhaltet die folgenden Angaben:

- (i) die zurückzuzahlende Serie von Schuldverschreibungen;
- (ii) eine Erklärung, ob diese Serie ganz oder teilweise zurückgezahlt wird und im letzteren Fall den Gesamtnennbetrag der zurückzuzahlenden Schuldverschreibungen;
- (iii) den Wahl-Rückzahlungszeitraum, der nicht weniger als **[Mindestkündigungsfrist]** Tage und nicht mehr als **[Höchstkündigungsfrist]** Tage nach dem Tag der Kündigung durch die Emittentin gegenüber den Gläubigern liegen darf; und

(iv) den Wahl-Rückzahlungsbetrag, zu dem die Schuldverschreibungen zurückgezahlt werden.

(c) Wenn die Schuldverschreibungen nur teilweise zurückgezahlt werden, werden die zurückzuzahlenden Schuldverschreibungen in Übereinstimmung mit den

Regeln des betreffenden Clearingsystems ausgewählt.] **[Falls die Schuldverschreibungen in Form einer NGN begeben werden, ist folgendes anwendbar:** Die teilweise Rückzahlung wird in den Registern von CBL und Euroclear nach deren Ermessen entweder als Pool-Faktor oder als Reduzierung des Gesamtnennbetrags wiedergegeben.]

Falls der Gläubiger ein Wahlrecht hat, die Schuldverschreibungen vorzeitig zu festgelegtem(n) Wahlrückzahlungsbetrag/-beträgen (Put) zu kündigen, ist folgendes anwendbar

[[4) *Vorzeitige Rückzahlung nach Wahl des Gläubigers.*

- (a) Die Emittentin hat eine Schuldverschreibung nach Ausübung des entsprechenden Wahlrechts durch den Gläubiger am/an den Wahl-Rückzahlungstag(en) zum/zu den Wahl-Rückzahlungsbetrag/-beträgen, wie nachstehend angegeben nebst etwaigen bis zum Wahl-Rückzahlungstag (ausschließlich) aufgelaufener Zinsen zurückzuzahlen.

Wahl-Rückzahlungstag(e) (Put)	Wahl-Rückzahlungsbetrag/-beträge (Put)
[Wahl-Rückzahlungstag(e)]	[Wahl-Rückzahlungsbetrag/-beträge]
[]	[]
[]	[]

Dem Gläubiger steht dieses Wahlrecht nicht in Bezug auf eine Schuldverschreibung zu, deren Rückzahlung die Emittentin zuvor in Ausübung ihres Wahlrechts nach diesem § 5 verlangt hat.

- (b) **[Um dieses Wahlrecht auszuüben, hat der Gläubiger nicht weniger als **[Mindestkündigungsfrist]** Tage und nicht mehr als **[Höchstkündigungsfrist]** Tage vor dem Wahl-Rückzahlungstag, an dem die Rückzahlung gemäß der Ausübungserklärung (wie nachstehend definiert) erfolgen soll, an die bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle der Emissionsstelle eine Mitteilung zur vorzeitigen Rückzahlung in Textform (z.B. eMail oder Fax) oder in schriftlicher Form ("**Ausübungserklärung**") zu schicken. Falls die Ausübungserklärung nach 17:00 Uhr Frankfurter Zeit am **[Mindestkündigungsfrist]** Tag vor dem Wahl-Rückzahlungstag (Put) eingeht, ist das Wahlrecht nicht wirksam ausgeübt. Die Ausübungserklärung hat anzugeben: (i) den gesamten Nennbetrag der Schuldverschreibungen, für die das Wahlrecht ausgeübt wird **[und]**, (ii) die Wertpapierkennnummern dieser Schuldverschreibungen (soweit vergeben) **[Im Fall der Verwahrung der Globalurkunde durch CBF ist folgendes anwendbar:** und (iii) Kontaktdaten sowie eine Kontoverbindung]. Für die Ausübungserklärung kann ein Formblatt, wie es bei den bezeichneten Geschäftsstellen der Emissionsstelle und der Zahlstelle[n] in deutscher und englischer Sprache erhältlich ist und das weitere Hinweise enthält, verwendet werden. Die Ausübung des Wahlrechts kann nicht widerrufen werden.]**

Falls der Gläubiger ein Wahlrecht hat, die Schuldverschreibungen vorzeitig aufgrund eines Kontrollwechsels zu kündigen, ist folgendes

[[5) *Kontrollwechsel.* Wenn zu einem Zeitpunkt, zu dem die Schuldverschreibungen noch nicht vollständig zurückgezahlt sind, ein Kontrollwechsel eintritt und während der Kontrollwechselfrist eine Herabstufung des Ratings erfolgt (zusammen ein "**Rückzahlungsereignis**"), so hat jeder Gläubiger das Recht (sofern die Emittentin nicht vor Abgabe der unten genannten Rückzahlungsmittteilung mitgeteilt hat, dass sie die Schuldverschreibungen nach § 5 Absatz 2 (*Vorzeitige Rückzahlung aus steuerlichen Gründen*) zurückzahlen wird), von der Emittentin zu verlangen, seine Schuldverschreibungen am Obligatorischen Rückzahlungstag zum Nennbetrag zuzüglich Zinsen bis zum Obligatorischen Rückzahlungstag (ausschließlich) zurückzuzahlen.

Sobald die Emittentin davon Kenntnis erhält, dass ein Rückzahlungsereignis eingetreten ist, hat sie den Gläubigern dies unverzüglich gemäß [§ 13] (*Mitteilungen*) mitzuteilen (eine "**Rückzahlungsmitteilung**"). In der Rückzahlungsmitteilung sind die Art des Rückzahlungsereignisses anzugeben, die Umstände, die zu dem Rückzahlungsereignis geführt haben, sowie die Modalitäten der Ausübung des in diesem § 5 Absatz [5] geregelten Rechts auf vorzeitige Rückzahlung.

Die wirksame Ausübung des in diesem § 5 Absatz [5] geregelten Rechts auf vorzeitige Rückzahlung setzt voraus, dass der Gläubiger innerhalb der Ausübungsfrist der Emissionsstelle nach dem hierfür von [Euroclear] [,] [und CBF] [und] [CBL] und CBL vorgesehenen Prozedere (welches auch vorsehen kann, dass die Mitteilung durch oder auf Veranlassung von Euroclear oder CBL oder einer gemeinsamen Verwahrstelle auf elektronischem Wege an die Emissionsstelle übermittelt wird), das von Euroclear und CBL von Zeit zu Zeit festgelegt wird, mitgeteilt hat, dass er das Recht auf vorzeitige Rückzahlung ausübt.

In dieser Bestimmung haben die folgenden Begriffe die folgende Bedeutung:

Ein "**Kontrollwechsel**" gilt jedes Mal dann als eingetreten (ob die persönlich haftende Gesellschafterin oder die persönlich haftenden Gesellschafter oder der Aufsichtsrat der Emittentin zustimmen oder nicht), wenn eine Person oder mehrere Personen, die ihr Verhalten aufeinander abgestimmt haben, oder im Auftrag solcher Personen handelnde Personen, bei denen es sich nicht um

- (i) die Bertelsmann Stiftung,
- (ii) Mitglieder der Familie Mohn und/oder
- (iii) eine oder mehrere Personenvereinigungen oder Gesellschaften, an der oder an denen direkt oder indirekt im wesentlichen nur die Bertelsmann Stiftung und/oder Mitglieder der Familie Mohn beteiligt sind,

handelt, direkt oder indirekt mehr als 50% (i) der Komplementäranteile der persönlich haftenden Gesellschafterin oder der persönlich haftenden Gesellschafter der Emittentin oder der Anteile an der persönlich haftenden Gesellschafterin oder der persönlich haftenden Gesellschafter der Emittentin, oder (ii) der Kapitalanteile an der Emittentin erwerben.

"**Bertelsmann Stiftung**" bezeichnet die Bertelsmann Stiftung, Gütersloh.

"**Mitglieder der Familie Mohn**" bezeichnet Reinhard und Elisabeth Mohn und die mit ihnen im Sinne von § 1589 des Bürgerlichen Gesetzbuches verwandten Personen.

"**Kontrollwechselfrist**" ist der Zeitraum, der 120 Tage nach dem Mitteilungstag endet.

"**Mitteilungstag**" ist der Tag, an dem die Emittentin zum ersten Mal mitteilt, dass ein Kontrollwechsel eingetreten ist.

"**Investment Grade-Rating**" ist im Falle von S&P ein Rating von wenigstens BBB- (oder vergleichbar), im Fall von Moody's ein Rating von wenigstens Baa3 (oder vergleichbar) bzw. ein entsprechendes Rating einer anderen Ratingagentur.

"**Investment Grade-Wertpapier**" ist jedes Geratete Wertpapier, das von allen Ratingagenturen, die ein Rating für dieses Wertpapier vergeben haben, ein Investment Grade-Rating erhalten hat.

"**Obligatorischer Rückzahlungstag**" ist der siebte Tag nach dem letzten Tag der Ausübungsfrist.

"**Ausübungsfrist**" ist der Zeitraum von 45 Tagen seit der Abgabe einer Rückzahlungsmitteilung (wobei der Tag der Rückzahlungsmitteilung mitzuzählen ist).

"**Geratete Wertpapiere**" sind:

- (a) die Schuldverschreibungen sowie

- (b) alle anderen vergleichbaren langfristigen Fremdkapitalinstrumente der Emittentin, die von der Emittentin durch Mitteilung gemäß [§ 13] zu Gerateten Wertpapieren im Sinne dieser Definition erklärt worden sind und die durch mindestens eine Ratingagentur geratet sind.

"**Ratingagenturen**" meint jede Ratingagentur von Standard & Poor's Rating Services, ein Teil von McGraw Hill Financial Inc. ("**S&P**"), Moody's Investors Services Inc. ("**Moody's**") und ihre jeweiligen Nachfolgeunternehmen sowie jede andere Ratingagentur, die von der Emittentin ernannt wird.

Eine "**Herabstufung des Ratings**" liegt vor:

- (a) wenn während der Kontrollwechselfrist
- (i) ein einem Gerateten Wertpapier zugeordnetes Rating zurückgezogen wird oder
 - (ii) sofern ein Geratetes Wertpapier, am Mitteilungstag ein Investment Grade-Wertpapier war, dieses Geratete Wertpapier kein Investment Grade-Rating durch mindestens eine Ratingagentur mehr hat; oder
 - (iii) (sofern am Mitteilungstag kein Geratetes Wertpapier über ein Investment Grade-Rating verfügt) das Rating eines Gerateten Wertpapiers von einer Ratingagentur um eine oder mehrere volle Stufen (*notches*) herabgestuft wird (also z.B. von BB+ nach BB durch S&P oder von Ba1 nach Ba2 durch Moody's bzw. eine entsprechende Herabstufung innerhalb eines vergleichbaren Ratingsystems),

wobei jedoch nur dann eine Herabstufung des Ratings vorliegt, wenn der Entzug oder die Herabstufung des Ratings ausweislich der öffentlichen Verlautbarung oder einer an die Emittentin gerichteten schriftlichen Bestätigung der betreffenden Ratingagentur zumindest teilweise auf den Kontrollwechsel zurückzuführen ist; oder

- (b) wenn am Mitteilungstag keine Gerateten Wertpapiere vorhanden sind und entweder:
- (i) die Emittentin nicht jede zumutbare Anstrengung unternimmt, um innerhalb von 45 Tagen nach dem Mitteilungstag von einer Ratingagentur für die Gerateten Wertpapiere ein Rating zu erhalten, oder
 - (ii) die Emittentin solche Bemühungen zwar unternimmt, aber aufgrund des Kontrollwechsels am Ende der Kontrollwechselfrist noch immer keine Investment Grade-Wertpapiere vorhanden sind und die Ratingagentur öffentlich mitteilt, oder gegenüber der Emittentin schriftlich bestätigt, dass ihre Weigerung, ein Investment Grade-Rating zu vergeben, zumindest teilweise auf den Kontrollwechsel zurückzuführen ist.]

§ 6

DIE EMISSIONSSTELLE UND DIE ZAHLSTELLEN

(1) *Bestellung; bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle.* Die anfänglich bestellte Emissionsstelle und die anfänglich bestellte Zahlstelle und deren jeweilige bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle lauten wie folgt:

Emissions- und Zahlstelle: Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft
Trust & Agency Services
Taunusanlage 12
60325 Frankfurt am Main
Bundesrepublik Deutschland

Die Emissionsstelle und die Zahlstelle behalten sich das Recht vor, jederzeit ihre jeweilige bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle durch eine andere bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle in demselben Land zu ersetzen.

(2) *Änderung der Bestellung oder Abberufung.* Die Emittentin behält sich das Recht vor, jederzeit die Bestellung der Emissionsstelle oder einer Zahlstelle zu ändern oder zu beenden und eine andere Emissionsstelle oder zusätzliche oder andere Zahlstellen, vorausgesetzt dass, sofern nicht anderweitig hier geregelt, diese Zahlstelle nicht in den Vereinigten Staaten sein wird, zu bestellen. Die Emittentin

wird zu jedem Zeitpunkt [(i)] eine Emissionsstelle unterhalten [Im Fall von Zahlungen in US-Dollar ist folgendes anwendbar: und (ii) falls Zahlungen bei den oder durch die Geschäftsstellen aller Zahlstellen außerhalb der Vereinigten Staaten (wie in § 1(3)(b) definiert) aufgrund der Einführung von Devisenbeschränkungen oder ähnlichen Beschränkungen hinsichtlich der vollständigen Zahlung oder des Empfangs der entsprechenden Beträge in US-Dollar widerrechtlich oder tatsächlich ausgeschlossen werden, eine Zahlstelle mit bezeichneter Geschäftsstelle in New York City unterhalten].

Eine Änderung, Abberufung, Bestellung oder ein sonstiger Wechsel wird nur wirksam (außer im Insolvenzfall, in dem eine solche Änderung sofort wirksam wird), sofern die Gläubiger hierüber gemäß [§ 13] vorab unter Einhaltung einer Frist von mindestens 30 und nicht mehr als 45 Tagen informiert wurden.

(3) *Beauftragte der Emittentin*. Die Emissionsstelle und die Zahlstelle handeln ausschließlich als Beauftragte der Emittentin und übernehmen keinerlei Verpflichtungen gegenüber den Gläubigern und es wird kein Auftrags- oder Treuhandverhältnis zwischen ihnen und den Gläubigern begründet.

§ 7 STEUERN

Sämtliche auf die Schuldverschreibungen zu zahlenden Beträge sind ohne Einbehalt oder Abzug von oder aufgrund von gegenwärtigen oder zukünftigen Steuern oder sonstigen Abgaben gleich welcher Art zu leisten, die von oder in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland oder für deren Rechnung oder von oder für Rechnung einer politischen Untergliederung oder Steuerbehörde der oder in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland auferlegt oder erhoben werden, es sei denn, ein solcher Einbehalt oder Abzug ist gesetzlich vorgeschrieben.

In diesem Fall wird die Emittentin diejenigen zusätzlichen Beträge (die "**zusätzlichen Beträge**") zahlen, die erforderlich sind, damit die den Gläubigern zufließenden Nettobeträge nach diesem Einbehalt oder Abzug jeweils den Beträgen entsprechen, die ohne einen solchen Einbehalt oder Abzug von den Gläubigern empfangen worden wären; die Verpflichtung zur Zahlung solcher zusätzlicher Beträge besteht jedoch nicht im Hinblick auf Steuern und Abgaben, die:

- (a) von einer als Depotbank oder Inkassobeauftragter des Gläubigers handelnden Person oder sonst auf andere Weise zu entrichten sind als dadurch, dass die Emittentin aus den von ihr zu leistenden Zahlungen von Kapital oder Zinsen einen Abzug oder Einbehalt vornimmt; oder
- (b) wegen einer gegenwärtigen oder früheren persönlichen oder geschäftlichen Beziehung des Gläubigers zu der Bundesrepublik Deutschland zu zahlen sind, und nicht allein deshalb, weil Zahlungen auf die Schuldverschreibungen aus Quellen in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland stammen (oder für Zwecke der Besteuerung so behandelt werden) oder dort besichert sind; oder
- (c) aufgrund (i) einer Richtlinie oder Verordnung der Europäischen Union betreffend die Besteuerung von Zinserträgen oder (ii) einer zwischenstaatlichen Vereinbarung über deren Besteuerung, an der die Bundesrepublik Deutschland oder die Europäische Union beteiligt ist, oder (iii) einer gesetzlichen Vorschrift, die diese Richtlinie, Verordnung oder Vereinbarung umsetzt oder befolgt, abzuziehen oder einzubehalten sind; oder
- (d) aufgrund einer Rechtsänderung zahlbar sind, die später als 30 Tage nach Fälligkeit der betreffenden Zahlung von Kapital oder Zinsen oder, wenn dies später erfolgt, ordnungsgemäßer Bereitstellung aller fälligen Beträge und einer diesbezüglichen Bekanntmachung gemäß § 13 wirksam wird.

Die seit dem 1. Januar 1993 in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland geltende Zinsabschlagsteuer (seit dem 1. Januar 2009: Kapitalertragsteuer) und der seit dem 1. Januar 1995 darauf erhobene Solidaritätszuschlag sind keine Steuer oder sonstige Abgabe im oben genannten Sinn, für die zusätzliche Beträge seitens der Emittentin zu zahlen wären.

§ 8 VORLEGUNGSFRIST

Die in § 801 Absatz 1 Satz 1 BGB bestimmte Vorlegungsfrist wird für die Schuldverschreibungen auf zehn Jahre abgekürzt.

§ 9 KÜNDIGUNG

(1) *Kündigungsgründe.* Jeder Gläubiger ist berechtigt, seine Schuldverschreibungen zu kündigen und deren sofortige Tilgung zu ihrem Rückzahlungsbetrag (wie in § 5 Absatz 1 definiert), zuzüglich etwaiger bis zum Tage der Rückzahlung aufgelaufener Zinsen zu verlangen, falls einer der folgenden Kündigungsgründe ("**Kündigungsgründe**") vorliegt:

- (a) die Emittentin zahlt Kapital oder Zinsen nicht innerhalb von 30 Tagen nach dem betreffenden Fälligkeitstag; oder
- (b) die Emittentin unterlässt die ordnungsgemäße Erfüllung irgendeiner anderen Verpflichtung aus den Schuldverschreibungen und diese Unterlassung, falls sie geheilt werden kann, länger als 30 Tage fort dauert, nachdem die Emissionsstelle hierüber eine Benachrichtigung von einem Gläubiger erhalten hat; oder
- (c) eine Kapitalmarktverbindlichkeit (wie in § 2 Absatz 2 definiert) der Emittentin vorzeitig zahlbar wird aufgrund einer Nicht- oder Schlechterfüllung des dieser Kapitalmarktverbindlichkeit zugrunde liegenden Vertrages, oder die Emittentin einer Zahlungsverpflichtung in Höhe oder im Gegenwert von mehr als EUR 50.000.000 aus einer Kapitalmarktverbindlichkeit oder aufgrund einer Bürgschaft oder Garantie, die für eine Kapitalmarktverbindlichkeit Dritter gegeben wurde, nicht innerhalb von 30 Tagen nach ihrer Fälligkeit bzw. im Falle einer Bürgschaft oder Garantie nicht innerhalb von 30 Tagen nach Inanspruchnahme aus dieser Bürgschaft oder Garantie nachkommt, es sei denn die Emittentin bestreitet in gutem Glauben, dass diese Zahlungsverpflichtung besteht oder fällig ist bzw. diese Bürgschaft oder Garantie berechtigterweise geltend gemacht wird, oder falls eine für solche Verbindlichkeiten bestellte Sicherheit für die oder von den daraus berechtigten Gläubiger(n) in Anspruch genommen wird, oder
- (d) die Emittentin ihre Zahlungsunfähigkeit bekannt gibt oder ihre Zahlungen einstellt, oder
- (e) ein Gericht ein Insolvenzverfahren gegen die Emittentin eröffnet, oder die Emittentin ein solches Verfahren einleitet oder beantragt, oder
- (f) die Emittentin in Liquidation tritt, es sei denn, dies geschieht im Zusammenhang mit einer Verschmelzung oder einer anderen Form des Zusammenschlusses mit einer anderen Gesellschaft und diese Gesellschaft übernimmt alle Verpflichtungen, die die Emittentin im Zusammenhang mit diesen Schuldverschreibungen eingegangen ist, oder
- (g) in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland irgendein Gesetz, eine Verordnung oder behördliche Anordnung erlassen wird oder ergeht, aufgrund derer die Emittentin daran gehindert wird, die von ihr gemäß diesen Bedingungen übernommenen Verpflichtungen in vollem Umfang zu beachten und zu erfüllen und diese Lage nicht binnen 90 Tagen behoben ist.

Das Kündigungsrecht erlischt, falls der Kündigungsgrund vor Ausübung des Rechts geheilt wurde.

(2) *Benachrichtigung.* Eine Benachrichtigung, einschließlich einer Kündigung der Schuldverschreibungen gemäß vorstehendem Absatz 1 ist in Textform (z.B. eMail oder Fax) oder schriftlich in deutscher oder englischer Sprache gegenüber der Emissionsstelle zu erklären und an dessen bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle zu übermitteln. Der Benachrichtigung ist ein Nachweis beizufügen, aus dem sich ergibt, dass der betreffende Gläubiger zum Zeitpunkt der Abgabe der Benachrichtigung Inhaber der betreffenden Schuldverschreibung ist. Der Nachweis kann durch eine

Bescheinigung der Depotbank (wie in [§ 14] Absatz 3 definiert) oder auf andere geeignete Weise erbracht werden.

§ 10 ERSETZUNG

(1) *Ersetzung.* Die Emittentin ist jederzeit berechtigt, sofern sie sich nicht mit einer Zahlung von Kapital oder Zinsen auf die Schuldverschreibungen in Verzug befindet, ohne Zustimmung der Gläubiger eine Tochtergesellschaft (wie nachstehend definiert) der Emittentin an ihrer Stelle als Hauptschuldnerin (die "**Nachfolgeschuldnerin**") für alle Verpflichtungen aus und im Zusammenhang mit diesen Schuldverschreibungen einzusetzen, vorausgesetzt, dass:

- (a) die Nachfolgeschuldnerin sich verpflichtet, jedem Gläubiger alle Steuern, Gebühren oder Abgaben zu erstatten, die ihm in Folge der Ersetzung durch die Nachfolgeschuldnerin auferlegt werden;
- (b) die Nachfolgeschuldnerin alle Verpflichtungen der Emittentin aus oder im Zusammenhang mit diesen Schuldverschreibungen übernimmt;
- (c) die Nachfolgeschuldnerin in der Lage ist, sämtliche sich aus oder in dem Zusammenhang mit diesen Schuldverschreibungen ergebenden Zahlungsverpflichtungen ohne die Notwendigkeit eines Einbehalts von irgendwelchen Steuern oder Abgaben an der Quelle zu erfüllen sowie die hierzu erforderlichen Beträge ohne Beschränkungen an die Emissionsstelle übertragen können;
- (d) sichergestellt ist, dass die Emittentin unwiderruflich und unbedingt gegenüber den Gläubigern die Zahlung aller von der Nachfolgeschuldnerin auf die Schuldverschreibungen zahlbaren Beträge zu Bedingungen garantiert, die den Bedingungen des Musters der erstrangigen Garantie der Emittentin hinsichtlich nicht nachrangiger Schuldverschreibungen, das im Agency Agreement enthalten ist, entsprechen [**Falls die Bestimmungen über Beschlüsse der Gläubiger gelten, ist folgendes anwendbar:** (wobei auf diese Garantie die unten in § 11 aufgeführten auf die Schuldverschreibungen anwendbaren Bestimmungen sinngemäß Anwendung finden)]; und
- (e) der Emissionsstelle jeweils eine Bestätigung bezüglich der betroffenen Rechtsordnungen von anerkannten Rechtsanwälten vorgelegt wird, dass die Bestimmungen in den vorstehenden Unterabsätzen (a), (b), (c) und (d) erfüllt wurden.

Im Sinne dieser Bedingungen bedeutet "**Tochtergesellschaft**" eine Kapital- oder Personengesellschaft, an der die Emittentin direkt oder indirekt insgesamt mehr als 50% des Kapitals jeder Klasse oder der Stimmrechte hält.

(2) *Bekanntmachung.* Jede Ersetzung ist gemäß [§ 13] bekanntzumachen.

(3) *Änderung von Bezugnahmen.* Im Fall einer Ersetzung gilt jede Bezugnahme in diesen Bedingungen auf die Emittentin ab dem Zeitpunkt der Ersetzung als Bezugnahme auf die Nachfolgeschuldnerin und jede Bezugnahme auf das Land, in dem die Emittentin ihren Sitz oder Steuersitz hat, gilt ab diesem Zeitpunkt als Bezugnahme auf das Land, in dem die Nachfolgeschuldnerin ihren Sitz oder Steuersitz hat. Des Weiteren gilt im Fall einer Ersetzung folgendes:

- (a) in § 7 und § 5 (2) gilt eine alternative Bezugnahme auf die Bundesrepublik Deutschland als aufgenommen (zusätzlich zu der Bezugnahme nach Maßgabe des vorstehenden Satzes auf das Land, in dem die Nachfolgeschuldnerin ihren Sitz oder Steuersitz hat);
- (b) in § 9 (1)(c) bis (g) gilt eine alternative Bezugnahme auf die Emittentin in ihrer Eigenschaft als Garantin als aufgenommen (zusätzlich zu der Bezugnahme auf die Nachfolgeschuldnerin).

Falls die
Schuldverschrei-
bungen
Beschlüsse
der Gläubiger
vorsehen, ist
folgendes
anwendbar

[§ 11
ÄNDERUNG DER ANLEIHEBEDINGUNGEN,
GEMEINSAMER VERTRETER

(1) *Änderung der Anleihebedingungen.* Die Gläubiger können entsprechend den Bestimmungen des Gesetzes über Schuldverschreibungen aus Gesamtemissionen (*Schuldverschreibungsgesetz – "SchVG"*) durch einen Beschluss mit der in Absatz 2 bestimmten Mehrheit über einen im SchVG zugelassenen Gegenstand eine Änderung der Anleihebedingungen mit der Emittentin vereinbaren. Die Mehrheitsbeschlüsse der Gläubiger sind für alle Gläubiger gleichermaßen verbindlich. Ein Mehrheitsbeschluss der Gläubiger, der nicht gleiche Bedingungen für alle Gläubiger vorsieht, ist unwirksam, es sei denn die benachteiligten Gläubiger stimmen ihrer Benachteiligung ausdrücklich zu.

(2) *Mehrheitserfordernisse.* Die Gläubiger entscheiden mit einer Mehrheit von 75 % der an der Abstimmung teilnehmenden Stimmrechte. Beschlüsse, durch welche der wesentliche Inhalt der Anleihebedingungen nicht geändert wird und die keinen Gegenstand der § 5 Absatz 3, Nr. 1 bis Nr. 8 des SchVG betreffen, bedürfen zu ihrer Wirksamkeit einer einfachen Mehrheit der an der Abstimmung teilnehmenden Stimmrechte.

(3) *Beschlüsse der Gläubiger.* Beschlüsse der Gläubiger werden nach Wahl der Emittentin im Wege der Abstimmung ohne Versammlung nach § 18 SchVG oder einer Gläubigerversammlung nach § 9 SchVG gefasst

(4) *Leitung der Abstimmung.* Die Abstimmung wird von einem von der Emittentin beauftragten Notar oder, falls der gemeinsame Vertreter zur Abstimmung aufgefordert hat, vom gemeinsamen Vertreter geleitet.

(5) *Stimmrecht.* An Abstimmungen der Gläubiger nimmt jeder Gläubiger nach Maßgabe des Nennwerts oder des rechnerischen Anteils seiner Berechtigung an den ausstehenden Schuldverschreibungen teil.

(6) *Gemeinsamer Vertreter.*

[Falls kein gemeinsamer Vertreter in den Anleihebedingungen bestellt wird, ist folgendes anwendbar: Die Gläubiger können durch Mehrheitsbeschluss zur Wahrnehmung ihrer Rechte einen gemeinsamen Vertreter für alle Gläubiger bestellen.]

[Im Fall der Bestellung des gemeinsamen Vertreters in den Anleihebedingungen, ist folgendes anwendbar: Gemeinsamer Vertreter ist **[Gemeinsamer Vertreter]**. Die Haftung des gemeinsamen Vertreters ist auf das Zehnfache seiner jährlichen Vergütung beschränkt, es sei denn, dem gemeinsamen Vertreter fällt Vorsatz oder grobe Fahrlässigkeit zur Last.]

Der gemeinsame Vertreter hat die Aufgaben und Befugnisse, welche ihm durch Gesetz oder von den Gläubigern durch Mehrheitsbeschluss eingeräumt wurden. Er hat die Weisungen der Gläubiger zu befolgen. Soweit er zur Geltendmachung von Rechten der Gläubiger ermächtigt ist, sind die einzelnen Gläubiger zur selbständigen Geltendmachung dieser Rechte nicht befugt, es sei denn der Mehrheitsbeschluss sieht dies ausdrücklich vor. Über seine Tätigkeit hat der gemeinsame Vertreter den Gläubigern zu berichten. Für die Abberufung und die sonstigen Rechte und Pflichten des gemeinsamen Vertreters gelten die Vorschriften des SchVG.]

[§ 12]
BEGEBUNG WEITERER SCHULDVERSCHREIBUNGEN, ANKAUF UND ENTWERTUNG

(1) *Begebung weiterer Schuldverschreibungen.* Die Emittentin ist berechtigt, jederzeit ohne Zustimmung der Gläubiger weitere Schuldverschreibungen mit gleicher Ausstattung (gegebenenfalls mit Ausnahme des Tags der Begebung, des Verzinsungsbeginns und/oder des Ausgabepreises) in der Weise zu begeben, dass sie mit diesen Schuldverschreibungen eine einheitliche Serie bilden.

(2) *Ankauf.* Die Emittentin ist berechtigt, Schuldverschreibungen im Markt oder anderweitig zu jedem beliebigen Preis zu kaufen. Die von der Emittentin erworbenen Schuldverschreibungen können nach Wahl der Emittentin von ihr gehalten, weiterverkauft oder bei der Emissionsstelle zwecks Entwertung eingereicht werden. Sofern diese Käufe durch öffentliches Angebot erfolgen, muß dieses Angebot allen Gläubigern gemacht werden.

(3) *Entwertung.* Sämtliche vollständig zurückgezahlten Schuldverschreibungen sind unverzüglich zu entwerten und können nicht wieder begeben oder verkauft werden.

[§ 13]
MITTEILUNGEN

Im Fall von Schuldverschreibungen, die in der offiziellen Liste der Luxemburger Börse notiert werden, ist folgendes anwendbar

[(1) *Bekanntmachung.* Alle die Schuldverschreibungen betreffenden Mitteilungen erfolgen durch elektronische Publikation auf der Website der Luxemburger Börse (www.bourse.lu). Jede Mitteilung gilt am dritten Tag nach dem Tag der Veröffentlichung als wirksam erfolgt.

(2) *Mitteilungen an das Clearingsystem.*

Solange Schuldverschreibungen an der Luxemburger Börse notiert sind, findet Absatz (1) Anwendung. Soweit die Regeln der Luxemburger Börse dies zulassen, kann die Emittentin eine Veröffentlichung nach Absatz (1) durch eine Mitteilung an das Clearingsystem zur Weiterleitung an die Gläubiger ersetzen; jede derartige Mitteilung gilt am siebenten Tag nach dem Tag der Mitteilung an das Clearingsystem als den Gläubigern mitgeteilt.]

Im Fall von Schuldverschreibungen, die nicht an einer Börse notiert sind, ist folgendes anwendbar

[(1) *Mitteilungen an das Clearingsystem.* Die Emittentin wird alle die Schuldverschreibungen betreffenden Mitteilungen an das Clearingsystem zur Weiterleitung an die Gläubiger übermitteln. Jede derartige Mitteilung gilt am siebenten Tag nach dem Tag der Mitteilung an das Clearingsystem als den Gläubigern mitgeteilt.]

[(2)][(3)] *Form der Mitteilung.* Mitteilungen, die von einem Gläubiger gemacht werden, müssen in Textform (z.B. eMail oder Fax) oder schriftlich erfolgen und zusammen mit dem Nachweis seiner Inhaberschaft gemäß § [14] Absatz 3 an die Emissionsstelle gesendet werden. Eine solche Mitteilung kann über das Clearing-System in der von der Emissionsstelle und dem Clearing-System dafür vorgesehenen Weise erfolgen.

[§ 14]
**ANWENDBARES RECHT, GERICHTSSTAND
UND GERICHTLICHE GELTENDMACHUNG**

(1) *Anwendbares Recht.* Form und Inhalt der Schuldverschreibungen sowie die Rechte und Pflichten der Gläubiger und der Emittentin bestimmen sich in jeder Hinsicht nach deutschem Recht.

(2) *Gerichtsstand.* Nicht ausschließlich zuständig für sämtliche im Zusammenhang mit den Schuldverschreibungen entstehenden Klagen oder sonstige Verfahren ("**Rechtsstreitigkeiten**") ist das Landgericht Frankfurt am Main.

(3) *Gerichtliche Geltendmachung.* Jeder Gläubiger von Schuldverschreibungen ist berechtigt, in jedem Rechtsstreit gegen die Emittentin oder in jedem Rechtsstreit, in dem der Gläubiger und die Emittentin Partei sind, seine Rechte aus diesen Schuldverschreibungen im eigenen Namen auf der folgenden Grundlage zu schützen oder geltend zu machen: (i) er bringt eine Bescheinigung der Depotbank bei, bei der er für die Schuldverschreibungen ein Wertpapierdepot unterhält, welche (a) den vollständigen Namen und die vollständige Adresse des Gläubigers enthält, (b) den Gesamtnennbetrag der Schuldverschreibungen bezeichnet, die unter dem Datum der Bestätigung auf dem Wertpapierdepot verbucht sind und (c) bestätigt, dass die Depotbank gegenüber dem Clearingsystem eine schriftliche Erklärung abgegeben hat, die die vorstehend unter (a) und (b) bezeichneten Informationen enthält; (ii) er legt eine Kopie der die betreffenden Schuldverschreibungen verbriefenden Globalurkunde vor, deren Übereinstimmung mit dem Original eine vertretungsberechtigte Person des Clearingsystems oder des Verwahrers des Clearingsystems bestätigt hat, ohne dass eine Vorlage der Originalbelege oder der die Schuldverschreibungen verbriefenden Globalurkunde in einem solchen Verfahren erforderlich wäre oder (iii) auf jede andere Weise, die im Lande der Geltendmachung prozessual zulässig ist. Für die Zwecke des Vorstehenden bezeichnet "Depotbank" jede Bank oder ein sonstiges anerkanntes Finanzinstitut, das berechtigt ist, das Wertpapierverwahrungsgeschäft zu betreiben und bei der/dem der Gläubiger ein Wertpapierdepot für die Schuldverschreibungen unterhält, einschließlich des Clearingsystems.

[§ 15]
SPRACHE

Falls die Anleihebedingungen in deutscher Sprache mit einer Übersetzung in die englische Sprache abgefasst sind, ist folgendes anwendbar

[Diese Anleihebedingungen sind in deutscher Sprache abgefasst. Eine Übersetzung in die englische Sprache ist beigelegt. Der deutsche Text ist bindend und maßgeblich. Die Übersetzung in die englische Sprache ist unverbindlich.]

Falls die Anleihebedingungen in englischer Sprache mit einer Übersetzung in die deutsche Sprache abgefasst sind, ist folgendes anwendbar

[Diese Anleihebedingungen sind in englischer Sprache abgefasst. Eine Übersetzung in die deutsche Sprache ist beigelegt. Der englische Text ist bindend und maßgeblich. Die Übersetzung in die deutsche Sprache ist unverbindlich.]

Falls die Anleihebedingungen ausschließlich in deutscher Sprache abgefasst sind, ist folgendes anwendbar

[Diese Anleihebedingungen sind ausschließlich in deutscher Sprache abgefasst.]

Falls die Anleihebedingungen ausschließlich in englischer Sprache abgefasst sind, ist folgendes anwendbar

[Diese Anleihebedingungen sind ausschließlich in englischer Sprache abgefasst.]

OPTION II – Anleihebedingungen für Schuldverschreibungen mit variabler Verzinsung

**ANLEIHEBEDINGUNGEN DER SCHULDVERSCHREIBUNGEN
- (DEUTSCHE FASSUNG) -**

**§ 1
WÄHRUNG, STÜCKELUNG, FORM, DEFINITIONEN**

(1) *Währung; Stückelung.* Diese Serie der Schuldverschreibungen (die "**Schuldverschreibungen**") der Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA (die "**Emittentin**") wird in [**festgelegte Währung**] (die "**festgelegte Währung**") im Gesamtnennbetrag von [**Falls die Globalurkunde eine NGN ist, ist folgendes anwendbar: (vorbehaltlich § 1(4)) [Gesamtnennbetrag]**] (in Worten: [**Gesamtnennbetrag in Worten**]) in einer Stückelung von [**festgelegte Stückelung**] (die "**festgelegte Stückelung**") begeben.

(2) *Form.* Die Schuldverschreibungen lauten auf den Inhaber und sind durch eine oder mehrere Globalurkunden verbrieft (jeweils eine "**Globalurkunde**").

(3) *Vorläufige Globalurkunde – Austausch.*

(a) Die Schuldverschreibungen sind anfänglich durch eine vorläufige Globalurkunde (die "**vorläufige Globalurkunde**") ohne Zinsscheine verbrieft. Die vorläufige Globalurkunde wird gegen Schuldverschreibungen in der festgelegten Stückelung, die durch eine Dauerglobalurkunde (die "**Dauerglobalurkunde**") ohne Zinsscheine verbrieft sind, ausgetauscht. Die vorläufige Globalurkunde und die Dauerglobalurkunde tragen jeweils die Unterschriften ordnungsgemäß bevollmächtigter Vertreter der Emittentin und sind mit einer Kontrollunterschrift versehen. Einzelurkunden und Zinsscheine werden nicht ausgegeben.

(b) Die vorläufige Globalurkunde wird frühestens an einem Tag (der "**Austauschtag**") gegen die Dauerglobalurkunde austauschbar, der 40 Tage nach dem Tag der Ausgabe der vorläufigen Globalurkunde liegt. Ein solcher Austausch soll nur nach Vorlage von Bescheinigungen gemäß U.S. Steuerrecht erfolgen, wonach der oder die wirtschaftlichen Eigentümer der durch die vorläufige Globalurkunde verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen keine US-Personen sind (ausgenommen bestimmte Finanzinstitute oder bestimmte Personen, die Schuldverschreibungen über solche Finanzinstitute halten). Zinszahlungen auf durch eine Vorläufige Globalurkunde verbrieft Schuldverschreibungen erfolgen erst nach Vorlage solcher Bescheinigungen. Eine gesonderte Bescheinigung ist hinsichtlich einer jeden solchen Zinszahlung erforderlich. Jede Bescheinigung, die am oder nach dem 40. Tag nach dem Tag der Ausgabe der Vorläufigen Globalurkunde eingeht, wird als ein Ersuchen behandelt werden, diese vorläufige Globalurkunde gemäß diesem Absatz (b) dieses § 1 (3) auszutauschen. Wertpapiere, die im Austausch für die vorläufige Globalurkunde geliefert werden, sind nur außerhalb der Vereinigten Staaten zu liefern (wie in § 4 (3) definiert).

(4) *Clearingsystem.* Die Globalurkunde, die die Schuldverschreibungen verbrieft, wird von einem oder für ein Clearingsystem verwahrt. "**Clearingsystem**" bedeutet [**Bei mehr als einem Clearingsystem ist folgendes anwendbar: jeweils**] folgendes: [Clearstream Banking AG, Neue Börsenstraße 1, 60487 Frankfurt am Main, Bundesrepublik Deutschland ("**CBF**")] [Clearstream Banking société anonyme, 42 Avenue JF Kennedy, 1855 Luxemburg, Großherzogtum Luxemburg ("**CBL**")], Euroclear Bank SA/NV, Boulevard du Roi Albert II, 1210 Brüssel, Belgien ("**Euroclear**") (CBL und Euroclear jeweils ein "**ICSD**" und zusammen die "**ICSDs**") und jeder Funktionsnachfolger.

**Im Fall von
Schuldverschreibungen, die
im Namen der
ICSDs**

[Die Schuldverschreibungen werden in Form einer New Global Note ("**NGN**") ausgegeben und von einem common safekeeper im Namen beider ICSDs verwahrt.

Der Gesamtnennbetrag der durch die Globalurkunde verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen entspricht dem jeweils in den Registern beider ICSDs

verwahrt werden und die Globalurkunde eine NGN ist, ist folgendes anwendbar

eingetragenen Gesamtbetrag. Die Register der ICSDs (unter denen die Register zu verstehen sind, die jeder ICSD für seine Kunden über den Betrag ihres Anteils an den Schuldverschreibungen führt) sind maßgeblicher Nachweis des Gesamtnennbetrages der durch die Globalurkunde verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen, und eine zu diesen Zwecken von einem ICSD jeweils ausgestellte Bescheinigung mit dem Betrag der so verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen ist maßgebliche Bestätigung des Inhalts des Registers des betreffenden ICSD zu dem fraglichen Zeitpunkt.

Bei jeder Rückzahlung oder einer Zinszahlung auf die durch die Globalurkunde verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen bzw. beim Kauf und der Entwertung der durch die Globalurkunde verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen stellt die Emittentin sicher, dass die Einzelheiten der Rückzahlung, Zahlung oder des Kaufs und der Entwertung bezüglich der Globalurkunde *pro rata* in die Unterlagen der ICSDs eingetragen werden, und dass, nach dieser Eintragung, vom Gesamtnennbetrag der in die Register der ICSDs aufgenommenen und durch die Globalurkunde verbrieften Schuldverschreibungen der Gesamtnennbetrag der zurückgekauften bzw. gekauften und entwerteten Schuldverschreibungen abgezogen wird.]

[Falls die vorläufige Globalurkunde eine NGN ist, ist folgendes anwendbar: Bei Austausch nur eines Teils von Schuldverschreibungen, die durch eine vorläufige Globalurkunde verbrieft sind, wird die Emittentin sicherstellen, dass die Einzelheiten dieses Austauschs *pro rata* in die Register der ICSDs aufgenommen werden.]

Im Fall von Schuldverschreibungen, die im Namen der ICSDs verwahrt werden und die Globalurkunde eine CGN ist, ist folgendes anwendbar

[Die Schuldverschreibungen werden in Form einer Classical Global Note ("**CGN**") ausgegeben und von einer gemeinsamen Verwahrstelle im Namen beider ICSDs verwahrt.]

Falls § 11 über Änderung der Anleihebedingungen und den Gemeinsamen Vertreter gilt, ist folgendes anwendbar

(5) *Gläubiger von Schuldverschreibungen.* "**Gläubiger**" bedeutet jeder Inhaber eines Miteigentumsanteils oder anderen Rechts an den Schuldverschreibungen.

[(6) *In Bezug genommene Bedingungen.* Die Bestimmungen gemäß Schedule 5 des Geänderten und Neugefassten Emissions- und Zahlstellenvertrages vom 18. April 2018 (das "**Agency Agreement**") zwischen der Emittentin und Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft als Emissions- und Zahlstelle (einsehbar unter www.bourse.lu), die überwiegend das für Gläubigerversammlungen oder Abstimmungen der Gläubiger ohne Versammlung zu wählende Verfahren betreffen, sind in vollem Umfang durch diese Anleihebedingungen in Bezug genommen.]

§ 2 STATUS, NEGATIVVERPFLICHTUNG

(1) *Status.* Die Schuldverschreibungen begründen nicht besicherte und nicht nachrangige Verbindlichkeiten der Emittentin, die untereinander und mit allen anderen nicht besicherten und nicht nachrangigen Verbindlichkeiten der Emittentin gleichrangig sind mit Ausnahme von Verbindlichkeiten, die nach geltenden Rechtsvorschriften vorrangig sind.

(2) *Negativverpflichtung.* Die Emittentin verpflichtet sich solange eine Schuldverschreibung noch aussteht (aber nur bis zu dem Zeitpunkt, in dem alle Beträge von Kapital und Zinsen der Emissionsstelle zur Verfügung gestellt worden sind), weder ihr gesamtes noch einen Teil ihres gegenwärtigen oder zukünftigen Vermögens mit Pfandrechten, Rechten aus Abtretung oder Übertragung, Hypotheken oder Grundpfandrechten oder sonstigen Sicherungsrechten zur Besicherung einer gegenwärtigen oder zukünftigen Kapitalmarktverbindlichkeit (wie

nachstehend definiert), die von der Emittentin (oder einer anderen Person) eingegangen oder garantiert ist, zu belasten oder solche Rechte zu diesem Zweck bestehen zu lassen, ohne gleichzeitig die Gläubiger an derselben Sicherheit in gleicher Weise und anteilmäßig teilnehmen zu lassen. Diese Verpflichtung findet jedoch keine Anwendung in Bezug auf Sicherungsrechte, die auf einem Vermögensgegenstand zum Zeitpunkt des Erwerbs durch die Emittentin lasten.

Für die Zwecke dieser Bedingungen bezeichnet "**Kapitalmarktverbindlichkeit**" jede Verbindlichkeit hinsichtlich der Rückzahlung geliehener Geldbeträge, die durch Schuldscheine oder durch Schuldverschreibungen oder sonstige Wertpapiere, die an einer Börse oder an einem anderen anerkannten Wertpapiermarkt notiert oder gehandelt werden oder werden können, verbrieft, verkörpert oder dokumentiert sind.

§ 3 ZINSEN

(1) *Zinszahlungstage.*

(a) Die Schuldverschreibungen werden bezogen auf ihren Gesamtnennbetrag ab dem **[Verzinsungsbeginn]** (der "**Verzinsungsbeginn**") (einschließlich) bis zum ersten Zinszahlungstag (ausschließlich) und danach von jedem Zinszahlungstag (einschließlich) bis zum nächstfolgenden Zinszahlungstag (ausschließlich) verzinst. Zinsen auf die Schuldverschreibungen sind an jedem Zinszahlungstag zahlbar.

(b) "**Zinszahlungstag**" bedeutet

[jeder **[festgelegte Zinszahlungstage]**.]

Im Fall von festgelegten Zinszahlungstagen ist folgendes anwendbar

Im Fall von festgelegten Zinsperioden ist folgendes anwendbar

[(soweit diese Bedingungen keine abweichenden Bestimmungen vorsehen) jeweils der Tag, der **[Zahl]** **[Wochen]** **[Monate]** nach dem vorausgehenden Zinszahlungstag liegt, oder im Fall des ersten Zinszahlungstages, nach dem Verzinsungsbeginn.]

Bei Anwendung der modifizierten folgender Geschäftstag Konvention ist folgendes anwendbar

(c) Fällt ein Zinszahlungstag auf einen Tag, der kein Geschäftstag (wie nachstehend definiert) ist, so wird der Zinszahlungstag

[auf den nächstfolgenden Geschäftstag verschoben, es sei denn, jener würde dadurch in den nächsten Kalendermonat fallen; in diesem Fall wird der Zinszahlungstag auf den unmittelbar vorausgehenden Geschäftstag verlegt.]

Bei Anwendung der FRN (*Floating Rate Note* –variabel verzinsliche Schuldverschreibung)-Konvention ist folgendes anwendbar

[auf den nächstfolgenden Geschäftstag verschoben, es sei denn, jener würde dadurch in den nächsten Kalendermonat fallen; in diesem Fall (i) wird der Zinszahlungstag auf den unmittelbar vorausgehenden Geschäftstag verlegt und (ii) ist jeder nachfolgende Zinszahlungstag der jeweils letzte Geschäftstag des Monats, der **[Zahl]** Monate nach dem vorausgehenden anwendbaren Zinszahlungstag liegt.]

Bei Anwendung der folgenden Geschäftstag-Konvention ist folgendes anwendbar

[auf den nächstfolgenden Geschäftstag verschoben.]

Bei Anwendung der vorangegangener Geschäftstag Konvention ist folgendes anwendbar

[auf den unmittelbar vorausgehenden Geschäftstag verlegt.]

Falls die festgelegte Währung nicht Euro ist, ist folgendes anwendbar

(d) "**Geschäftstag**" bezeichnet einen Tag

[(außer einem Samstag oder Sonntag), an dem Geschäftsbanken und Devisen für den Geschäftsverkehr geöffnet sind und Devisenmärkte Zahlungen in **[relevante(s) Finanzzentrum(en)]** abwickeln] [.] [und]

Falls das Clearing System und TARGET geöffnet sein sollen, ist folgendes anwendbar

[, an dem das Clearing System sowie alle betroffenen Bereiche des Trans-European Automated Real-time Gross Settlement System 2 ("**TARGET**") geöffnet sind, um Zahlungen abzuwickeln.]

Falls der Angebotssatz für Einlagen in der festgelegten Währung EURIBOR ist, ist folgendes anwendbar

[(2) *Zinssatz*. Der Zinssatz (der "**Zinssatz**") für jede Zinsperiode (wie nachstehend definiert) ist, sofern nachstehend nichts abweichendes bestimmt wird, der Angebotssatz (ausgedrückt als Prozentsatz *per annum*) für Einlagen in der festgelegten Währung für die jeweilige Zinsperiode, der auf der Bildschirmseite am Zinsfestlegungstag (wie nachstehend definiert) gegen 11.00 Uhr (Brüsseler Ortszeit) angezeigt wird [**Im Fall einer Marge ist folgendes anwendbar:** [zuzüglich] [abzüglich] der Marge (wie nachstehend definiert)], wobei alle Festlegungen durch die Berechnungsstelle erfolgen.

"**Zinsperiode**" bezeichnet den Zeitraum von dem Verzinsungsbeginn (einschließlich) bis zum ersten Zinszahlungstag (ausschließlich) bzw. von jedem Zinszahlungstag (einschließlich) bis zum jeweils darauffolgenden Zinszahlungstag (ausschließlich).

"**Zinsfestlegungstag**" bezeichnet den zweiten TARGET Geschäftstag vor Beginn der jeweiligen Zinsperiode. "**TARGET-Geschäftstag**" bezeichnet einen Tag, an dem das Trans-European Automated Real-time Gross Settlement Express Transfer System 2 ("**TARGET**") geöffnet ist.

[**Im Fall einer Marge ist folgendes anwendbar:** Die "**Marge**" beträgt [●]% per annum.]

"**Bildschirmseite**" bedeutet Reuters Bildschirmseite EURIBOR01 oder jede Nachfolgesseite.

Sollte zu der genannten Zeit die maßgebliche Bildschirmseite nicht zur Verfügung stehen oder kein Angebotssatz angezeigt werden, wird die Berechnungsstelle von

Falls der Angebotssatz für Einlagen in der festgelegten Währung LIBOR ist, ist folgendes anwendbar

den Referenzbanken (wie nachstehend definiert) deren jeweilige Angebotssätze (jeweils als Prozentsatz *per annum* ausgedrückt) für Einlagen in der festgelegten Währung für die betreffende Zinsperiode gegenüber führenden Banken im Interbanken-Markt in der Euro-Zone um ca. 11.00 Uhr (Brüsseler Ortszeit) am Zinsfestlegungstag anfordern. Falls zwei oder mehr Referenzbanken der Berechnungsstelle solche Angebotssätze nennen, ist der Zinssatz für die betreffende Zinsperiode das arithmetische Mittel (falls erforderlich, auf- oder abgerundet auf das nächste ein Tausendstel Prozent aufgerundet, wobei 0,0005 aufgerundet wird) dieser Angebotssätze **[Im Fall einer Marge ist folgendes anwendbar: [zuzüglich] [abzüglich] der Marge]**, wobei alle Festlegungen durch die Berechnungsstelle erfolgen.

Falls an einem Zinsfestlegungstag nur eine oder keine der Referenzbanken der Berechnungsstelle solche im vorstehenden Absatz beschriebenen Angebotssätze nennt, ist der Zinssatz für die betreffende Zinsperiode der Satz *per annum*, den die Berechnungsstelle als das arithmetische Mittel (falls erforderlich, auf- oder abgerundet auf das nächste ein Tausendstel Prozent, wobei 0,0005 aufgerundet wird) der Angebotssätze ermittelt, die von der Berechnungsstelle in angemessener Sorgfalt ausgewählte Großbanken im Interbanken-Markt in der Euro-Zone der Berechnungsstelle auf ihre Anfrage als den jeweiligen Satz nennen, zu dem sie um ca. 11.00 Uhr (Brüsseler Ortszeit) am betreffenden Zinsfestlegungstag Darlehen in der festgelegten Währung für die betreffende Zinsperiode und über einen repräsentativen Betrag gegenüber führenden europäischen Banken anbieten **[Im Falle einer Marge ist folgendes anwendbar: [zuzüglich] [abzüglich] der Marge.]**

"Euro-Zone" bezeichnet das Gebiet derjenigen Mitgliedstaaten der Europäischen Union, die gemäß dem Vertrag über die Gründung der Europäischen Gemeinschaft (unterzeichnet in Rom am 25. März 1957), geändert durch den Vertrag über die Europäische Union (unterzeichnet in Maastricht am 7. Februar 1992), den Amsterdamer Vertrag vom 2. Oktober 1997 und den Vertrag von Lissabon vom 13. Dezember 2007, in seiner jeweiligen Fassung, eine einheitliche Währung eingeführt haben oder jeweils eingeführt haben werden.

"Referenzbanken" bezeichnet vier Großbanken im Interbanken-Markt in der Euro-Zone.]

[(2) *Zinssatz*. Der Zinssatz (der "**Zinssatz**") für jede Zinsperiode (wie nachstehend definiert) ist, sofern nachstehend nichts abweichendes bestimmt wird, der Angebotssatz (ausgedrückt als Prozentsatz *per annum*) für Einlagen in der festgelegten Währung für die jeweilige Zinsperiode, der auf der Bildschirmseite am Zinsfestlegungstag (wie nachstehend definiert) um 11.00 Uhr (Londoner Ortszeit) angezeigt wird **[Im Falle einer Marge ist folgendes anwendbar: [zuzüglich] [abzüglich] der Marge (wie nachstehend definiert)]**, wobei alle Festlegungen durch die Berechnungsstelle erfolgen.

"**Zinsperiode**" bezeichnet jeweils den Zeitraum von dem Verzinsungsbeginn (einschließlich) bis zum ersten Zinszahlungstag (ausschließlich) bzw. von jedem Zinszahlungstag (einschließlich) bis zum jeweils darauffolgenden Zinszahlungstag (ausschließlich).

"**Zinsfestlegungstag**" bezeichnet den [ersten][zweiten] **[relevante(s) Finanzzentrum(en)]** Geschäftstag vor Beginn der jeweiligen Zinsperiode. "**[irrelevante(s) Finanzzentrum(en)] Geschäftstag**" bezeichnet einen Tag (außer einem Samstag oder Sonntag), an dem Geschäftsbanken in **[relevante(s) Finanzzentrum(en)]** für Geschäfte (einschließlich Devisen- und Sortengeschäfte) geöffnet sind.]

[Im Falle einer Marge ist folgendes anwendbar: "Marge" beträgt [•]% per annum.]

"**Bildschirmseite**" bedeutet Reuters Bildschirmseite **[LIBOR01] [LIBOR02]** oder jede Nachfolgesseite.

Sollte zu der genannten Zeit die maßgebliche Bildschirmseite nicht zur Verfügung stehen oder kein Angebotssatz angezeigt werden, wird die Berechnungsstelle von den Referenzbanken (wie nachstehend definiert) deren jeweilige Angebotssätze

(jeweils als Prozentsatz *per annum* ausgedrückt) für Einlagen in der festgelegten Währung für die betreffende Zinsperiode gegenüber führenden Banken im Londoner Interbanken-Markt um ca. 11.00 Uhr (Londoner Ortszeit) am Zinsfestlegungstag anfordern. Falls zwei oder mehr Referenzbanken der Berechnungsstelle solche Angebotssätze nennen, ist der Zinssatz für die betreffende Zinsperiode das arithmetische Mittel (falls erforderlich, auf- oder abgerundet auf das nächste ein Hunderttausendstel Prozent, wobei 0,000005 aufgerundet wird) dieser Angebotssätze **[Im Fall einer Marge ist folgendes anwendbar: [zuzüglich] [abzüglich] der Marge]**, wobei alle Festlegungen durch die Berechnungsstelle erfolgen.

Falls an einem Zinsfestlegungstag nur eine oder keine der Referenzbanken der Berechnungsstelle solche im vorstehenden Absatz beschriebenen Angebotssätze nennt, ist der Zinssatz für die betreffende Zinsperiode der Satz *per annum*, den die Berechnungsstelle als das arithmetische Mittel (falls erforderlich, auf- oder abgerundet auf das nächste ein Hunderttausendstel Prozent, wobei 0,000005 aufgerundet wird) der Angebotssätze ermittelt, die von der Berechnungsstelle in angemessener Sorgfalt ausgewählte Großbanken im Londoner Interbanken-Markt der Berechnungsstelle auf ihre Anfrage als den jeweiligen Satz nennen, zu dem sie um ca. 11.00 Uhr (Londoner Ortszeit) am betreffenden Zinsfestlegungstag Darlehen in der festgelegten Währung für die betreffende Zinsperiode und über einen repräsentativen Betrag gegenüber führenden europäischen Banken anbieten **[Im Falle einer Marge ist folgendes anwendbar: [zuzüglich] [abzüglich] der Marge]**.

"Referenzbanken" bezeichnet vier Großbanken im Londoner Interbanken-Markt.

Falls der Zinssatz nicht gemäß den vorstehenden Bestimmungen dieses Absatzes (2) ermittelt werden kann, ist der Zinssatz der Angebotssatz auf der Bildschirmseite, wie vorstehend beschrieben, an dem letzten Tag vor dem Zinsfestlegungstag, an dem dieser Angebotssatz angezeigt wurde **[[zuzüglich] [abzüglich] der Marge (wie vorstehend definiert)]**, wobei alle Festlegungen durch die Berechnungsstelle erfolgen.]

Falls ein
Mindestzinssatz
gilt, ist
folgendes
anwendbar

[(3) *Mindest-Zinssatz.* Wenn der gemäß den obigen Bestimmungen für eine Zinsperiode ermittelte Zinssatz niedriger ist als **[Mindestzinssatz], so ist der Zinssatz für diese Zinsperiode **[Mindestzinssatz]**.]**

Falls ein
Höchstzinssatz
gilt, ist
folgendes
anwendbar

[(3) *Höchst-Zinssatz.* Wenn der gemäß den obigen Bestimmungen für eine Zinsperiode ermittelte Zinssatz höher ist als **[Höchstzinssatz], so ist der Zinssatz für diese Zinsperiode **[Höchstzinssatz einfügen]**.]**

[(4)] *Zinsbetrag.* Die Berechnungsstelle wird zu oder baldmöglichst nach jedem Zeitpunkt, an dem der Zinssatz zu bestimmen ist, den Zinssatz bestimmen und den auf die Schuldverschreibungen zahlbaren Zinsbetrag in Bezug auf die Schuldverschreibungen (der "Zinsbetrag**") für die entsprechende Zinsperiode berechnen. Der Zinsbetrag wird ermittelt, indem der Zinssatz und der Zinstagequotient (wie nachstehend definiert) auf den Gesamtnennbetrag der Schuldverschreibungen angewendet werden, wobei der resultierende Betrag auf die kleinste Einheit der festgelegten Währung auf- oder abgerundet wird, wobei 0,5 solcher Einheiten aufgerundet werden.**

[(5)] *Mitteilung von Zinssatz und Zinsbetrag.* Die Berechnungsstelle wird veranlassen, dass der Zinssatz, der Zinsbetrag für die jeweilige Zinsperiode, die jeweilige Zinsperiode und der relevante Zinszahlungstag der Emittentin, sowie den Gläubigern gemäß [§ 13] baldmöglichst, aber keinesfalls später als am vierten auf die Berechnung jeweils folgenden **[TARGET] [relevante(s) Finanzzentrum(en)] Geschäftstag (wie in § 3 (2) definiert) sowie jeder Börse, an der die betreffenden Schuldverschreibungen zu diesem Zeitpunkt notiert sind und deren Regeln eine Mitteilung an die Börse verlangen, baldmöglichst, aber keinesfalls später als zu Beginn der jeweiligen Zinsperiode mitgeteilt werden. Im Fall einer Verlängerung oder**

Verkürzung der Zinsperiode können der mitgeteilte Zinsbetrag und Zinszahlungstag ohne Vorankündigung nachträglich angepasst (oder andere geeignete Anpassungsregelungen getroffen) werden. Jede solche Anpassung wird umgehend allen Börsen, an denen die Schuldverschreibungen zu diesem Zeitpunkt notiert sind, sowie den Gläubigern gemäß [§ 13] mitgeteilt.

[(6)] *Verbindlichkeit der Festsetzungen.* Alle Bescheinigungen, Mitteilungen, Gutachten, Festsetzungen, Berechnungen, Quotierungen und Entscheidungen, die von der Berechnungsstelle für die Zwecke dieses § 3 gemacht, abgegeben, getroffen oder eingeholt werden, sind (sofern nicht ein offensichtlicher Irrtum vorliegt) für die Emittentin, die Emissionsstelle [, die Zahlstelle] und die Gläubiger bindend.

[(7)] *Auflaufende Zinsen.* Der Zinslauf der Schuldverschreibungen endet mit Ablauf des Tages, der dem Tag vorangeht, an dem sie zur Rückzahlung fällig werden. Sollte die Emittentin die Schuldverschreibungen bei Fälligkeit nicht einlösen, endet die Verzinsung des ausstehenden Gesamtnennbetrags der Schuldverschreibungen nicht am Fälligkeitstag, sondern erst mit Ablauf des Tages, der dem Tag der tatsächlichen Rückzahlung der Schuldverschreibungen vorangeht. Die Verzinsung des ausstehenden Gesamtnennbetrages vom Tag der Fälligkeit an (einschließlich) bis zum Tag der Rückzahlung der Schuldverschreibungen (ausschließlich) erfolgt zum gesetzlich festgelegten Satz für Verzugszinsen¹.

[(8)] *Zinstagequotient.* "**Zinstagequotient**" bezeichnet im Hinblick auf die Berechnung des Zinsbetrages auf eine Schuldverschreibung für einen beliebigen Zeitraum (der "**Zinsberechnungszeitraum**"):

Im Fall von Actual/365 (Fixed) ist folgendes anwendbar

[die tatsächliche Anzahl von Tagen im Zinsberechnungszeitraum dividiert durch 365.]

Im Fall von Actual/360 ist folgendes anwendbar

[die tatsächliche Anzahl von Tagen im Zinsberechnungszeitraum dividiert durch 360.]

§ 4 ZAHLUNGEN

(1) (a) *Zahlungen auf Kapital.* Zahlungen auf Kapital in Bezug auf die Schuldverschreibungen erfolgen nach Maßgabe des nachstehenden Absatzes 2 an das Clearingsystem oder dessen Order zur Gutschrift auf den Konten der jeweiligen Kontoinhaber des Clearingsystems außerhalb der Vereinigten Staaten.

(b) *Zahlung von Zinsen.* Die Zahlung von Zinsen auf Schuldverschreibungen erfolgt nach Maßgabe von Absatz 2 an das Clearingsystem oder dessen Order zur Gutschrift auf den Konten der jeweiligen Kontoinhaber des Clearingsystems.

Die Zahlung von Zinsen auf Schuldverschreibungen, die durch die vorläufige Globalurkunde verbrieft sind, erfolgt nach Maßgabe von Absatz 2 an das Clearingsystem oder dessen Order zur Gutschrift auf den Konten der jeweiligen Kontoinhaber des Clearingsystems, und zwar nach ordnungsgemäßer Bescheinigung gemäß § 1(3)(b).

(2) *Zahlungsweise.* Vorbehaltlich (i) geltender steuerlicher und sonstiger gesetzlicher Regelungen und Vorschriften und (ii) eines Einbehalts oder Abzugs aufgrund eines

¹ Der gesetzliche Verzugszinssatz beträgt für das Jahr fünf Prozentpunkte über dem von der Deutsche Bundesbank von Zeit zu Zeit veröffentlichten Basiszinssatz, §§ 288 Absatz 1, 247 BGB.

Vertrags wie in Section 1471(b) des U.S. Internal Revenue Code von 1986 (der "**Code**") beschrieben bzw. anderweit gemäß Section 1471 bis Section 1474 des Code auferlegt, etwaigen aufgrund dessen getroffener Regelungen oder geschlossener Abkommen, etwaiger offizieller Auslegungen davon, oder von Gesetzen zur Umsetzung einer Regierungszusammenarbeit dazu erfolgen zu leistende Zahlungen auf die Schuldverschreibungen in der festgelegten Währung.

(3) *Vereinigte Staaten.* Für die Zwecke des § 1 (3) und dieses § 4 und § 6 (2) bezeichnet "**Vereinigte Staaten**" die Vereinigten Staaten von Amerika (einschließlich deren Bundesstaaten und des District of Columbia) sowie deren Territorien (einschließlich Puerto Rico, der U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, Wake Island und Northern Mariana Islands).

(4) *Erfüllung.* Die Emittentin wird durch Leistung der Zahlung an das Clearingsystem oder dessen Order von ihrer Zahlungspflicht befreit.

(5) *Zahltag.* Fällt der Fälligkeitstag einer Zahlung in Bezug auf eine Schuldverschreibung auf einen Tag, der kein Zahltag ist, dann hat der Gläubiger keinen Anspruch auf Zahlung vor dem nächsten Zahltag am jeweiligen Geschäftsort. Der Gläubiger ist nicht berechtigt, weitere Zinsen oder sonstige Zahlungen aufgrund dieser Verspätung zu verlangen.

Für diese Zwecke bezeichnet "**Zahltag**" einen Geschäftstag,

(6) *Bezugnahmen auf Kapital und Zinsen.* Bezugnahmen in diesen Anleihebedingungen auf Kapital der Schuldverschreibungen schließen, soweit anwendbar, die folgenden Beträge ein: den Rückzahlungsbetrag der Schuldverschreibungen; **[Falls die Emittentin das Wahlrecht hat, die Schuldverschreibungen aus anderen als steuerlichen Gründen vorzeitig zurückzahlen, ist folgendes anwendbar:** den Wahl-Rückzahlungsbetrag der Schuldverschreibungen;] sowie jeden Aufschlag sowie sonstige auf oder in Bezug auf die Schuldverschreibungen zahlbaren Beträge. Bezugnahmen in diesen Anleihebedingungen auf Zinsen auf Schuldverschreibungen sollen, soweit anwendbar, sämtliche gemäß § 7 zahlbaren zusätzlichen Beträge einschließen.

(7) *Hinterlegung von Kapital und Zinsen.* Die Emittentin ist berechtigt, beim Amtsgericht Frankfurt am Main Zins- oder Kapitalbeträge zu hinterlegen, die von den Gläubigern nicht innerhalb von zwölf Monaten nach dem Fälligkeitstag beansprucht worden sind, auch wenn die Gläubiger sich nicht in Annahmeverzug befinden. Soweit eine solche Hinterlegung erfolgt, und auf das Recht der Rücknahme verzichtet wird, erlöschen die Ansprüche der Gläubiger gegen die Emittentin.

§ 5 RÜCKZAHLUNG

(1) *Rückzahlung bei Endfälligkeit.* Soweit nicht zuvor bereits ganz oder teilweise zurückgezahlt oder angekauft und entwertet, werden die Schuldverschreibungen zu ihrem Rückzahlungsbetrag am in den **[Rückzahlungsmonat]** fallenden Zinszahlungstag (der "**Fälligkeitstag**") zurückgezahlt. Der Rückzahlungsbetrag ("**Rückzahlungsbetrag**") in Bezug auf jede Schuldverschreibung entspricht dem Nennbetrag der Schuldverschreibungen.

(2) *Vorzeitige Rückzahlung aus steuerlichen Gründen.* Die Schuldverschreibungen können insgesamt, jedoch nicht teilweise, nach Wahl der Emittentin mit einer Kündigungsfrist von nicht weniger als 30 und nicht mehr als 60 Tagen gegenüber der Emissionsstelle und gemäß **[§ 13]** gegenüber den Gläubigern vorzeitig gekündigt und zu ihrem Rückzahlungsbetrag zuzüglich bis zum für die Rückzahlung festgesetzten Tag aufgelaufener Zinsen zurückgezahlt werden, falls die Emittentin als Folge einer Änderung oder Ergänzung der Steuer- oder Abgabengesetze und -vorschriften der Bundesrepublik Deutschland oder deren politischen Untergliederungen oder Steuerbehörden oder als Folge einer Änderung oder Ergänzung der Anwendung oder der offiziellen Auslegung dieser Gesetze und Vorschriften (vorausgesetzt diese Änderung oder Ergänzung wird am oder nach dem Tag, an dem die letzte Tranche dieser Serie von Schuldverschreibungen begeben wird wirksam) am nächstfolgenden Zinszahlungstag (wie in § 3 (1) definiert) zur Zahlung von zusätzlichen Beträgen (wie in § 7 dieser Bedingungen

definiert) verpflichtet sein wird und diese Verpflichtung nicht durch das Ergreifen vernünftiger der Emittentin zur Verfügung stehender Maßnahmen vermieden werden kann.

Eine solche Kündigung darf allerdings nicht (i) früher als 90 Tage vor dem frühestmöglichen Termin erfolgen, an dem die Emittentin verpflichtet wäre, solche zusätzlichen Beträge zu zahlen, falls eine Zahlung auf die Schuldverschreibungen dann fällig sein würde, oder (ii) erfolgen, wenn zu dem Zeitpunkt, zu dem die Kündigung erfolgt, die Verpflichtung zur Zahlung von zusätzlichen Beträgen nicht mehr wirksam ist. Der für die Rückzahlung festgelegte Termin muss ein Zinszahlungstag sein.

Eine solche Kündigung hat gemäß [§ 13] zu erfolgen. Sie ist unwiderruflich, muss den für die Rückzahlung festgelegten Termin nennen und eine zusammenfassende Erklärung enthalten, welche die das Rückzahlungsrecht der Emittentin begründenden Umstände darlegt.

Falls die Emittentin das Wahlrecht hat, die Schuldverschreibungen vorzeitig zum Rückzahlungsbetrag zurückzuzahlen, ist folgendes anwendbar

[(3) *Vorzeitige Rückzahlung nach Wahl der Emittentin.*

- (a) Die Emittentin kann, nachdem sie gemäß Absatz (b) gekündigt hat, die Schuldverschreibungen insgesamt oder teilweise am **[Zahl]** Jahre nach dem Verzinsungsbeginn folgenden Zinszahlungstag und danach an jedem darauf folgenden Zinszahlungstag (jeder ein "**Wahl-Rückzahlungsbetrag**", nebst etwaigen bis zum Wahl-Rückzahlungstag (ausschließlich) aufgelaufenen Zinsen zurückzahlen.
- (b) Die Kündigung ist den Gläubigern der Schuldverschreibungen durch die Emittentin gemäß [§ 13] bekannt zu geben. Sie beinhaltet die folgenden Angaben:
- (i) die zurückzuzahlende Serie von Schuldverschreibungen;
 - (ii) eine Erklärung, ob diese Serie ganz oder teilweise zurückgezahlt wird und im letzteren Fall den Gesamtnennbetrag der zurückzuzahlenden Schuldverschreibungen; und
 - (iii) den Wahl-Rückzahlungstag, der nicht weniger als **[Mindestkündigungsfrist]** und nicht mehr als **[Höchstkündigungsfrist]** Tage nach dem Tag der Kündigung durch die Emittentin gegenüber den Gläubigern liegen darf.
- (c) Wenn die Schuldverschreibungen nur teilweise zurückgezahlt werden, werden die zurückzuzahlenden Schuldverschreibungen in Übereinstimmung mit den Regeln des betreffenden Clearingsystems ausgewählt.] **[Falls die Schuldverschreibungen in Form einer NGN begeben werden, ist folgendes anwendbar:** Die teilweise Rückzahlung wird in den Registern von CBL und Euroclear nach deren Ermessen entweder als Pool-Faktor oder als Reduzierung des Gesamtnennbetrags wiedergegeben.]]

Falls der Gläubiger ein Wahlrecht hat, die Schuldverschreibungen vorzeitig aufgrund eines Kontrollwechsels zu kündigen, ist folgendes anwendbar

[[4)] *Kontrollwechsel.* Wenn zu einem Zeitpunkt, zu dem die Schuldverschreibungen noch nicht vollständig zurückgezahlt sind, ein Kontrollwechsel eintritt und während der Kontrollwechselfrist eine Herabstufung des Ratings erfolgt (zusammen ein "**Rückzahlungsereignis**"), so hat jeder Gläubiger das Recht (sofern die Emittentin nicht vor Abgabe der unten genannten Rückzahlungsmittel mitgeteilt hat, dass sie die Schuldverschreibungen nach § 5 Absatz 2 (*Vorzeitige Rückzahlung aus steuerlichen Gründen*) zurückzahlen wird), von der Emittentin zu verlangen, seine Schuldverschreibungen am Obligatorischen Rückzahlungstag zum Nennbetrag zuzüglich Zinsen bis zum Obligatorischen Rückzahlungstag (ausschließlich) zurückzuzahlen.

Sobald die Emittentin davon Kenntnis erhält, dass ein Rückzahlungsereignis eingetreten ist, hat sie den Gläubigern dies unverzüglich gemäß [§ 13] (*Mitteilungen*) mitzuteilen (eine "**Rückzahlungsmitteilung**"). In der Rückzahlungsmitteilung sind die Art des Rückzahlungsereignisses anzugeben, die Umstände, die zu dem Rückzahlungsereignis geführt haben, sowie die Modalitäten der Ausübung des in diesem § 5 Absatz [4] geregelten Rechts auf vorzeitige Rückzahlung.

Die wirksame Ausübung des in diesem § 5 Absatz [4] geregelten Rechts auf vorzeitige Rückzahlung setzt voraus, dass der Gläubiger innerhalb der Ausübungsfrist der Emissionsstelle nach dem hierfür von [Euroclear] [,] [und CBF] [und] [CBL] und CBL vorgesehenen Prozedere (welches auch vorsehen kann, dass die Mitteilung durch oder auf Veranlassung von Euroclear oder CBL oder einer gemeinsamen Verwahrstelle auf elektronischem Wege an die Emissionsstelle übermittelt wird), das von Euroclear und CBL von Zeit zu Zeit festgelegt wird, mitgeteilt hat, dass er das Recht auf vorzeitige Rückzahlung ausübt.

In dieser Bestimmung haben die folgenden Begriffe die folgende Bedeutung:

Ein "**Kontrollwechsel**" gilt jedes Mal dann als eingetreten (ob die persönlich haftende Gesellschafterin oder die persönlich haftenden Gesellschafter oder der Aufsichtsrat der Emittentin zustimmen oder nicht), wenn eine Person oder mehrere Personen, die ihr Verhalten aufeinander abgestimmt haben, oder im Auftrag solcher Personen handelnde Personen, bei denen es sich nicht um

- (i) die Bertelsmann Stiftung,
- (ii) Mitglieder der Familie Mohn und/oder
- (iii) eine oder mehrere Personenvereinigungen oder Gesellschaften, an der oder an denen direkt oder indirekt im wesentlichen nur die Bertelsmann Stiftung und/oder Mitglieder der Familie Mohn beteiligt sind,

handelt, direkt oder indirekt mehr als 50% (i) der Komplementäranteile der persönlich haftenden Gesellschafterin oder der persönlich haftenden Gesellschafter der Emittentin oder der Anteile an der persönlich haftenden Gesellschafterin oder der persönlich haftenden Gesellschafter der Emittentin, oder (ii) der Kapitalanteile an der Emittentin erwerben.

"**Bertelsmann Stiftung**" bezeichnet die Bertelsmann Stiftung, Gütersloh.

"**Mitglieder der Familie Mohn**" bezeichnet Reinhard und Elisabeth Mohn und die mit ihnen im Sinne von § 1589 des Bürgerlichen Gesetzbuches verwandten Personen.

"**Kontrollwechselfrist**" ist der Zeitraum, der 120 Tage nach dem Mitteilungstag endet.

"**Mitteilungstag**" ist der Tag, an dem die Emittentin zum ersten Mal mitteilt, dass ein Kontrollwechsel eingetreten ist.

"**Investment Grade-Rating**" ist im Falle von S&P ein Rating von wenigstens BBB- (oder vergleichbar), im Fall von Moody's ein Rating von wenigstens Baa3 (oder vergleichbar) bzw. ein entsprechendes Rating einer anderen Ratingagentur.

"**Investment Grade-Wertpapier**" ist jedes Geratete Wertpapier, das von allen Ratingagenturen, die ein Rating für dieses Wertpapier vergeben haben, ein Investment Grade-Rating erhalten hat.

"**Obligatorischer Rückzahlungstag**" ist der siebte Tag nach dem letzten Tag der Ausübungsfrist.

"**Ausübungsfrist**" ist der Zeitraum von 45 Tagen seit der Abgabe einer Rückzahlungsmitteilung (wobei der Tag der Rückzahlungsmitteilung mitzuzählen ist).

"**Geratete Wertpapiere**" sind:

- (a) die Schuldverschreibungen sowie
- (b) alle anderen vergleichbaren langfristigen Fremdkapitalinstrumente der

Emittentin, die von der Emittentin durch Mitteilung gemäß [§ 13] zu Gerateten Wertpapieren im Sinne dieser Definition erklärt worden sind und die durch mindestens eine Ratingagentur geratet sind.

"**Ratingagenturen**" meint jede Ratingagentur von Standard & Poor's Rating Services, ein Teil von McGraw Hill Financial Inc. ("**S&P**"), Moody's Investors Services Inc. ("**Moody's**") und ihre jeweiligen Nachfolgeunternehmen sowie jede andere Ratingagentur, die von der Emittentin ernannt wird.

Eine "**Herabstufung des Ratings**" liegt vor:

- (a) wenn während der Kontrollwechselfrist
 - (i) ein einem Gerateten Wertpapier zugeordnetes Rating zurückgezogen wird oder
 - (ii) sofern ein Geratetes Wertpapier, am Mitteilungstag ein Investment Grade-Wertpapier war, dieses Geratete Wertpapier kein Investment Grade-Rating durch mindestens eine Ratingagentur mehr hat; oder
 - (iii) (sofern am Mitteilungstag kein Geratetes Wertpapier über ein Investment Grade-Rating verfügt) das Rating eines Gerateten Wertpapiers von einer Ratingagentur um eine oder mehrere volle Stufen (*notches*) herabgestuft wird (also z.B. von BB+ nach BB durch S&P oder von Ba1 nach Ba2 durch Moody's bzw. eine entsprechende Herabstufung innerhalb eines vergleichbaren Ratingsystems),

wobei jedoch nur dann eine Herabstufung des Ratings vorliegt, wenn der Entzug oder die Herabstufung des Ratings ausweislich der öffentlichen Verlautbarung oder einer an die Emittentin gerichteten schriftlichen Bestätigung der betreffenden Ratingagentur zumindest teilweise auf den Kontrollwechsel zurückzuführen ist; oder

- (b) wenn am Mitteilungstag keine Gerateten Wertpapiere vorhanden sind und entweder:
 - (i) die Emittentin nicht jede zumutbare Anstrengung unternimmt, um innerhalb von 45 Tagen nach dem Mitteilungstag von einer Ratingagentur für die Gerateten Wertpapiere ein Rating zu erhalten, oder
 - (ii) die Emittentin solche Bemühungen zwar unternimmt, aber aufgrund des Kontrollwechsels am Ende der Kontrollwechselfrist noch immer keine Investment Grade-Wertpapiere vorhanden sind und die Ratingagentur öffentlich mitteilt, oder gegenüber der Emittentin schriftlich bestätigt, dass ihre Weigerung, ein Investment Grade-Rating zu vergeben, zumindest teilweise auf den Kontrollwechsel zurückzuführen ist.]

§ 6

DIE EMISSIONSSTELLE, DIE ZAHLSTELLEN UND DIE BERECHNUNGSSTELLE

(1) *Bestellung; bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle.* Die anfänglich bestellte Emissionsstelle, die anfänglich bestellte Zahlstelle und die anfänglich bestellte Berechnungsstelle und deren jeweilige bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle lauten wie folgt:

Emissions- und Zahlstelle: Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft
Trust & Agency Services
Taunusanlage 12
60325 Frankfurt am Main
Bundesrepublik Deutschland

[Die Emissionsstelle handelt auch als Berechnungsstelle.]

Falls die Emissionsstelle als Berechnungsstelle bestellt werden soll, ist folgendes anwendbar

Falls eine Berechnungsstelle bestellt werden soll, die nicht die Emissionsstelle ist, ist folgendes anwendbar

[Die Berechnungsstelle und ihre anfänglich bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle lauten:

Berechnungsstelle: **[Namen und bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle]**]

Die Emissionsstelle, die Zahlstelle und die Berechnungsstelle behalten sich das Recht vor, jederzeit ihre jeweilige bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle durch eine andere bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle in demselben Land zu ersetzen.

(2) *Änderung der Bestellung oder Abberufung.* Die Emittentin behält sich das Recht vor, jederzeit die Bestellung der Emissionsstelle oder einer Zahlstelle oder der Berechnungsstelle zu ändern oder zu beenden und eine andere Emissionsstelle oder zusätzliche oder andere Zahlstellen, vorausgesetzt dass, sofern nicht anderweitig hier geregelt, diese Zahlstelle nicht in den Vereinigten Staaten sein wird, oder eine andere Berechnungsstelle zu bestellen. Die Emittentin wird zu jedem Zeitpunkt (i) eine Emissionsstelle unterhalten **[Im Fall von Zahlungen in US-Dollar ist folgendes anwendbar:**, (ii) falls Zahlungen bei den oder durch die Geschäftsstellen aller Zahlstellen außerhalb der Vereinigten Staaten (wie in § 1(3)(b) definiert) aufgrund der Einführung von Devisenbeschränkungen oder ähnlichen Beschränkungen hinsichtlich der vollständigen Zahlung oder des Empfangs der entsprechenden Beträge in US-Dollar widerrechtlich oder tatsächlich ausgeschlossen werden, eine Zahlstelle mit bezeichneter Geschäftsstelle in New York City unterhalten] und [(iii)] eine Berechnungsstelle unterhalten.

Eine Änderung, Abberufung, Bestellung oder ein sonstiger Wechsel wird nur wirksam (außer im Insolvenzfall, in dem eine solche Änderung sofort wirksam wird), sofern die Gläubiger hierüber gemäß [§ 13] vorab unter Einhaltung einer Frist von mindestens 30 und nicht mehr als 45 Tagen informiert wurden.

(3) *Beauftragte der Emittentin.* Die Emissionsstelle, die Zahlstelle und die Berechnungsstelle handeln ausschließlich als Beauftragte der Emittentin und übernehmen keinerlei Verpflichtungen gegenüber den Gläubigern und es wird kein Auftrags- oder Treuhandverhältnis zwischen ihnen und den Gläubigern begründet.

§ 7 STEUERN

Sämtliche auf die Schuldverschreibungen zu zahlenden Beträge sind ohne Einbehalt oder Abzug von oder aufgrund von gegenwärtigen oder zukünftigen Steuern oder sonstigen Abgaben gleich welcher Art zu leisten, die von oder in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland oder für deren Rechnung oder von oder für Rechnung einer politischen Untergliederung oder Steuerbehörde der oder in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland auferlegt oder erhoben werden, es sei denn, ein solcher Einbehalt oder Abzug ist gesetzlich vorgeschrieben.

In diesem Fall wird die Emittentin diejenigen zusätzlichen Beträge (die "**zusätzlichen Beträge**") zahlen, die erforderlich sind, damit die den Gläubigern zufließenden Nettobeträge nach diesem Einbehalt oder Abzug jeweils den Beträgen entsprechen, die ohne einen solchen Einbehalt oder Abzug von den Gläubigern empfangen worden wären; die Verpflichtung zur Zahlung solcher zusätzlicher Beträge besteht jedoch nicht im Hinblick auf Steuern und Abgaben, die:

- (a) von einer als Depotbank oder Inkassobeauftragter des Gläubigers handelnden Person oder sonst auf andere Weise zu entrichten sind als dadurch, dass die Emittentin aus den von ihr zu leistenden Zahlungen von Kapital oder Zinsen einen Abzug oder Einbehalt vornimmt; oder
- (b) wegen einer gegenwärtigen oder früheren persönlichen oder geschäftlichen Beziehung des Gläubigers zu der Bundesrepublik Deutschland zu zahlen sind, und nicht allein deshalb, weil Zahlungen auf die Schuldverschreibungen aus

Quellen in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland stammen (oder für Zwecke der Besteuerung so behandelt werden) oder dort besichert sind; oder

- (c) aufgrund (i) einer Richtlinie oder Verordnung der Europäischen Union betreffend die Besteuerung von Zinserträgen oder (ii) einer zwischenstaatlichen Vereinbarung über deren Besteuerung, an der die Bundesrepublik Deutschland oder die Europäische Union beteiligt ist, oder (iii) einer gesetzlichen Vorschrift, die diese Richtlinie, Verordnung oder Vereinbarung umsetzt oder befolgt, abzuziehen oder einzubehalten sind; oder
- (d) aufgrund einer Rechtsänderung zahlbar sind, die später als 30 Tage nach Fälligkeit der betreffenden Zahlung von Kapital oder Zinsen oder, wenn dies später erfolgt, ordnungsgemäßer Bereitstellung aller fälligen Beträge und einer diesbezüglichen Bekanntmachung gemäß § 13 wirksam wird.

Die seit dem 1. Januar 1993 in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland geltende Zinsabschlagsteuer (seit dem 1. Januar 2009: Kapitalertragsteuer) und der seit dem 1. Januar 1995 darauf erhobene Solidaritätszuschlag sind keine Steuer oder sonstige Abgabe im oben genannten Sinn, für die zusätzliche Beträge seitens der Emittentin zu zahlen wären.

§ 8 VORLEGUNGSFRIST

Die in § 801 Absatz 1 Satz 1 BGB bestimmte Vorlegungsfrist wird für die Schuldverschreibungen auf zehn Jahre abgekürzt.

§ 9 KÜNDIGUNG

(1) *Kündigungsgründe.* Jeder Gläubiger ist berechtigt, seine Schuldverschreibungen zu kündigen und deren sofortige Tilgung zu ihrem Rückzahlungsbetrag (wie in § 5 Absatz 1 definiert), zuzüglich etwaiger bis zum Tage der Rückzahlung aufgelaufener Zinsen zu verlangen, falls einer der folgenden **Kündigungsgründe** ("Kündigungsgründe") vorliegt:

- a) die Emittentin zahlt Kapital oder Zinsen nicht innerhalb von 30 Tagen nach dem betreffenden Fälligkeitstag; oder
- (b) die Emittentin unterlässt die ordnungsgemäße Erfüllung irgendeiner anderen Verpflichtung aus den Schuldverschreibungen und diese Unterlassung, falls sie geheilt werden kann, länger als 30 Tage fort dauert, nachdem die Emissionsstelle hierüber eine Benachrichtigung von einem Gläubiger erhalten hat; oder
- (c) eine Kapitalmarktverbindlichkeit (wie in § 2 Absatz 2 definiert) der Emittentin vorzeitig zahlbar wird aufgrund einer Nicht- oder Schlechterfüllung des dieser Kapitalmarktverbindlichkeit zugrunde liegenden Vertrages, oder die Emittentin einer Zahlungsverpflichtung in Höhe oder im Gegenwert von mehr als EUR 50.000.000 aus einer Kapitalmarktverbindlichkeit oder aufgrund einer Bürgschaft oder Garantie, die für eine Kapitalmarktverbindlichkeit Dritter gegeben wurde, nicht innerhalb von 30 Tagen nach ihrer Fälligkeit bzw. im Falle einer Bürgschaft oder Garantie nicht innerhalb von 30 Tagen nach Inanspruchnahme aus dieser Bürgschaft oder Garantie nachkommt, es sei denn die Emittentin bestreitet in gutem Glauben, dass diese Zahlungsverpflichtung besteht oder fällig ist bzw. diese Bürgschaft oder Garantie berechtigterweise geltend gemacht wird, oder falls eine für solche Verbindlichkeiten bestellte Sicherheit für die oder von den daraus berechtigten Gläubiger(n) in Anspruch genommen wird, oder
- (d) die Emittentin ihre Zahlungsunfähigkeit bekannt gibt oder ihre Zahlungen einstellt, oder
- (e) ein Gericht ein Insolvenzverfahren gegen die Emittentin eröffnet, oder die Emittentin ein solches Verfahren einleitet oder beantragt, oder
- (f) die Emittentin in Liquidation tritt, es sei denn, dies geschieht im

Zusammenhang mit einer Verschmelzung oder einer anderen Form des Zusammenschlusses mit einer anderen Gesellschaft und diese Gesellschaft übernimmt alle Verpflichtungen, die die Emittentin im Zusammenhang mit diesen Schuldverschreibungen eingegangen ist, oder

- (g) in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland irgendein Gesetz, eine Verordnung oder behördliche Anordnung erlassen wird oder ergeht, aufgrund derer die Emittentin daran gehindert wird, die von ihr gemäß diesen Bedingungen übernommenen Verpflichtungen in vollem Umfang zu beachten und zu erfüllen und diese Lage nicht binnen 90 Tagen behoben ist.

Das Kündigungsrecht erlischt, falls der Kündigungsgrund vor Ausübung des Rechts geheilt wurde.

(2) *Benachrichtigung.* Eine Benachrichtigung, einschließlich einer Kündigung der Schuldverschreibungen gemäß vorstehendem Absatz 1 ist in Textform (z.B. eMail oder Fax) oder schriftlich in deutscher oder englischer Sprache gegenüber der Emissionsstelle zu erklären und an dessen bezeichnete Geschäftsstelle zu übermitteln. Der Benachrichtigung ist ein Nachweis beizufügen, aus dem sich ergibt, dass der betreffende Gläubiger zum Zeitpunkt der Abgabe der Benachrichtigung Inhaber der betreffenden Schuldverschreibung ist. Der Nachweis kann durch eine Bescheinigung der Depotbank (wie in [§ 14] Absatz 3 definiert) oder auf andere geeignete Weise erbracht werden.

§ 10 ERSETZUNG

(1) *Ersetzung.* Die Emittentin ist jederzeit berechtigt, sofern sie sich nicht mit einer Zahlung von Kapital oder Zinsen auf die Schuldverschreibungen in Verzug befindet, ohne Zustimmung der Gläubiger eine Tochtergesellschaft (wie nachstehend definiert) der Emittentin an ihrer Stelle als Hauptschuldnerin (die "**Nachfolgeschuldnerin**") für alle Verpflichtungen aus und im Zusammenhang mit diesen Schuldverschreibungen einzusetzen, vorausgesetzt, dass:

- (a) die Nachfolgeschuldnerin sich verpflichtet, jedem Gläubiger alle Steuern, Gebühren oder Abgaben zu erstatten, die ihm in Folge der Ersetzung durch die Nachfolgeschuldnerin auferlegt werden;
- (b) die Nachfolgeschuldnerin alle Verpflichtungen der Emittentin aus oder im Zusammenhang mit diesen Schuldverschreibungen übernimmt;
- (c) die Nachfolgeschuldnerin in der Lage ist, sämtliche sich aus oder in dem Zusammenhang mit diesen Schuldverschreibungen ergebenden Zahlungsverpflichtungen ohne die Notwendigkeit eines Einbehalts von irgendwelchen Steuern oder Abgaben an der Quelle zu erfüllen sowie die hierzu erforderlichen Beträge ohne Beschränkungen an die Emissionsstelle übertragen können;
- (d) sichergestellt ist, dass die Emittentin unwiderruflich und unbedingt gegenüber den Gläubigern die Zahlung aller von der Nachfolgeschuldnerin auf die Schuldverschreibungen zahlbaren Beträge zu Bedingungen garantiert, die den Bedingungen des Musters der erstrangigen Garantie der Emittentin hinsichtlich nicht nachrangiger Schuldverschreibungen, das im Agency Agreement enthalten ist, entsprechen [**Falls die Bestimmungen über Beschlüsse der Gläubiger gelten, ist folgendes anwendbar:** (wobei auf diese Garantie die unten in § 11 aufgeführten auf die Schuldverschreibungen anwendbaren Bestimmungen sinngemäß Anwendung finden)]; und
- (e) der Emissionsstelle jeweils eine Bestätigung bezüglich der betroffenen Rechtsordnungen von anerkannten Rechtsanwälten vorgelegt wird, dass die Bestimmungen in den vorstehenden Unterabsätzen (a), (b), (c) und (d) erfüllt wurden.

Im Sinne dieser Bedingungen bedeutet "**Tochtergesellschaft**" eine Kapital- oder Personengesellschaft, an der die Emittentin direkt oder indirekt insgesamt mehr als 50% des Kapitals jeder Klasse oder der Stimmrechte hält.

(2) *Bekanntmachung.* Jede Ersetzung ist gemäß [§ 13] bekanntzumachen.

(3) *Änderung von Bezugnahmen.* Im Fall einer Ersetzung gilt jede Bezugnahme in diesen Bedingungen auf die Emittentin ab dem Zeitpunkt der Ersetzung als Bezugnahme auf die Nachfolgeschuldnerin und jede Bezugnahme auf das Land, in dem die Emittentin ihren Sitz oder Steuersitz hat, gilt ab diesem Zeitpunkt als Bezugnahme auf das Land, in dem die Nachfolgeschuldnerin ihren Sitz oder Steuersitz hat. Des Weiteren gilt im Fall einer Ersetzung folgendes:

- (a) in § 7 und § 5 (2) gilt eine alternative Bezugnahme auf die Bundesrepublik Deutschland als aufgenommen (zusätzlich zu der Bezugnahme nach Maßgabe des vorstehenden Satzes auf das Land, in dem die Nachfolgeschuldnerin ihren Sitz oder Steuersitz hat);
- (b) in § 9 (1)(c) bis (g) gilt eine alternative Bezugnahme auf die Emittentin in ihrer Eigenschaft als Garantin als aufgenommen (zusätzlich zu der Bezugnahme auf die Nachfolgeschuldnerin).

Falls die Schuldverschreibungen Beschlüsse der Gläubiger vorsehen, ist folgendes anwendbar

[§ 11 ÄNDERUNG DER ANLEIHEBEDINGUNGEN, GEMEINSAMER VERTRETER

(1) *Änderung der Anleihebedingungen.* Die Gläubiger können entsprechend den Bestimmungen des Gesetzes über Schuldverschreibungen aus Gesamtemissionen (*Schuldverschreibungsgesetz – "SchVG"*) durch einen Beschluss mit der in Absatz 2 bestimmten Mehrheit über einen im SchVG zugelassenen Gegenstand eine Änderung der Anleihebedingungen mit der Emittentin vereinbaren. Die Mehrheitsbeschlüsse der Gläubiger sind für alle Gläubiger gleichermaßen verbindlich. Ein Mehrheitsbeschluss der Gläubiger, der nicht gleiche Bedingungen für alle Gläubiger vorsieht, ist unwirksam, es sei denn die benachteiligten Gläubiger stimmen ihrer Benachteiligung ausdrücklich zu.

(2) *Mehrheitserfordernisse.* Die Gläubiger entscheiden mit einer Mehrheit von 75 % der an der Abstimmung teilnehmenden Stimmrechte. Beschlüsse, durch welche der wesentliche Inhalt der Anleihebedingungen nicht geändert wird und die keinen Gegenstand der § 5 Absatz 3, Nr. 1 bis Nr. 8 des SchVG betreffen, bedürfen zu ihrer Wirksamkeit einer einfachen Mehrheit der an der Abstimmung teilnehmenden Stimmrechte.

(3) *Beschlüsse der Gläubiger.* Beschlüsse der Gläubiger werden nach Wahl der Emittentin im Wege der Abstimmung ohne Versammlung nach § 18 SchVG oder einer Gläubigerversammlung nach § 9 SchVG gefasst

(4) *Leitung der Abstimmung.* Die Abstimmung wird von einem von der Emittentin beauftragten Notar oder, falls der gemeinsame Vertreter zur Abstimmung aufgefordert hat, vom gemeinsamen Vertreter geleitet.

(5) *Stimmrecht.* An Abstimmungen der Gläubiger nimmt jeder Gläubiger nach Maßgabe des Nennwerts oder des rechnerischen Anteils seiner Berechtigung an den ausstehenden Schuldverschreibungen teil.

(6) *Gemeinsamer Vertreter.*

[Falls kein gemeinsamer Vertreter in den Anleihebedingungen bestellt wird, ist folgendes anwendbar: Die Gläubiger können durch Mehrheitsbeschluss zur Wahrnehmung ihrer Rechte einen gemeinsamen Vertreter für alle Gläubiger bestellen.]

[Im Fall der Bestellung des gemeinsamen Vertreters in den Anleihebedingungen, ist folgendes anwendbar: Gemeinsamer Vertreter ist **[Gemeinsamer Vertreter]**. Die Haftung des gemeinsamen Vertreters ist auf das Zehnfache seiner jährlichen Vergütung beschränkt, es sei denn, dem gemeinsamen

Vertreter fällt Vorsatz oder grobe Fahrlässigkeit zur Last.]

Der gemeinsame Vertreter hat die Aufgaben und Befugnisse, welche ihm durch Gesetz oder von den Gläubigern durch Mehrheitsbeschluß eingeräumt wurden. Er hat die Weisungen der Gläubiger zu befolgen. Soweit er zur Geltendmachung von Rechten der Gläubiger ermächtigt ist, sind die einzelnen Gläubiger zur selbständigen Geltendmachung dieser Rechte nicht befugt, es sei denn der Mehrheitsbeschluß sieht dies ausdrücklich vor. Über seine Tätigkeit hat der gemeinsame Vertreter den Gläubigern zu berichten. Für die Abberufung und die sonstigen Rechte und Pflichten des gemeinsamen Vertreters gelten die Vorschriften des SchVG.]

[§ 12]

BEGEBUNG WEITERER SCHULDVERSCHREIBUNGEN, ANKAUF UND ENTWERTUNG

(1) *Begebung weiterer Schuldverschreibungen.* Die Emittentin ist berechtigt, jederzeit ohne Zustimmung der Gläubiger weitere Schuldverschreibungen mit gleicher Ausstattung (gegebenenfalls mit Ausnahme des Tags der Begebung, des Verzinsungsbeginns und/oder des Ausgabepreises) in der Weise zu begeben, dass sie mit diesen Schuldverschreibungen eine einheitliche Serie bilden.

(2) *Ankauf.* Die Emittentin ist berechtigt, Schuldverschreibungen im Markt oder anderweitig zu jedem beliebigen Preis zu kaufen. Die von der Emittentin erworbenen Schuldverschreibungen können nach Wahl der Emittentin von ihr gehalten, weiterverkauft oder bei der Emissionsstelle zwecks Entwertung eingereicht werden. Sofern diese Käufe durch öffentliches Angebot erfolgen, muß dieses Angebot allen Gläubigern gemacht werden.

(3) *Entwertung.* Sämtliche vollständig zurückgezahlten Schuldverschreibungen sind unverzüglich zu entwerten und können nicht wieder begeben oder verkauft werden.

[§ 13]

MITTEILUNGEN

Im Fall von Schuldverschreibungen, die in der offiziellen Liste der Luxemburger Börse notiert werden, ist folgendes anwendbar

[(1) *Bekanntmachung.* Alle die Schuldverschreibungen betreffenden Mitteilungen erfolgen durch elektronische Publikation auf der Website der Luxemburger Börse (www.bourse.lu). Jede Mitteilung gilt am dritten Tag nach dem Tag der Veröffentlichung als wirksam erfolgt.]

(2) *Mitteilungen an das Clearingsystem.*

Solange Schuldverschreibungen an der Luxemburger Börse notiert sind, findet Absatz (1) Anwendung. Soweit die Mitteilung den Zinssatz von variabel verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen betrifft oder die Regeln der Luxemburger Börse dies sonst zulassen, kann die Emittentin eine Veröffentlichung nach Absatz (1) durch eine Mitteilung an das Clearingsystem zur Weiterleitung an die Gläubiger ersetzen; jede derartige Mitteilung gilt am siebenten Tag nach dem Tag der Mitteilung an das Clearingsystem als den Gläubigern mitgeteilt.]

Im Fall von Schuldverschreibungen, die nicht an einer Börse notiert sind, ist folgendes

[(1) *Mitteilungen an das Clearingsystem.* Die Emittentin wird alle die Schuldverschreibungen betreffenden Mitteilungen an das Clearingsystem zur Weiterleitung an die Gläubiger übermitteln. Jede derartige Mitteilung gilt am siebenten Tag nach dem Tag der Mitteilung an das Clearingsystem als den Gläubigern mitgeteilt.]

anwendbar

[(2)][(3)] *Form der Mitteilung.* Mitteilungen, die von einem Gläubiger gemacht werden, müssen in Textform (z.B. eMail oder Fax) oder schriftlich erfolgen und zusammen mit dem Nachweis seiner Inhaberschaft gemäß § [14] Absatz 3 an die Emissionsstelle gesendet werden. Eine solche Mitteilung kann über das Clearing-System in der von der Emissionsstelle und dem Clearing-System dafür vorgesehenen Weise erfolgen.

[§ 14]

ANWENDBARES RECHT, GERICHTSSTAND, UND GERICHTLICHE GELTENDMACHUNG

(1) *Anwendbares Recht.* Form und Inhalt der Schuldverschreibungen sowie die Rechte und Pflichten der Gläubiger und der Emittentin bestimmen sich in jeder Hinsicht nach deutschem Recht.

(2) *Gerichtsstand.* Nicht ausschließlich zuständig für sämtliche im Zusammenhang mit den Schuldverschreibungen entstehenden Klagen oder sonstige Verfahren ("**Rechtsstreitigkeiten**") ist das Landgericht Frankfurt am Main.

(3) *Gerichtliche Geltendmachung.* Jeder Gläubiger von Schuldverschreibungen ist berechtigt, in jedem Rechtsstreit gegen die Emittentin oder in jedem Rechtsstreit, in dem der Gläubiger und die Emittentin Partei sind, seine Rechte aus diesen Schuldverschreibungen im eigenen Namen auf der folgenden Grundlage zu schützen oder geltend zu machen: (i) er bringt eine Bescheinigung der Depotbank bei, bei der er für die Schuldverschreibungen ein Wertpapierdepot unterhält, welche (a) den vollständigen Namen und die vollständige Adresse des Gläubigers enthält, (b) den Gesamtnennbetrag der Schuldverschreibungen bezeichnet, die unter dem Datum der Bestätigung auf dem Wertpapierdepot verbucht sind und (c) bestätigt, dass die Depotbank gegenüber dem Clearingsystem eine schriftliche Erklärung abgegeben hat, die die vorstehend unter (a) und (b) bezeichneten Informationen enthält; (ii) er legt eine Kopie der die betreffenden Schuldverschreibungen verbriefenden Globalurkunde vor, deren Übereinstimmung mit dem Original eine vertretungsberechtigte Person des Clearingsystems oder des Verwahrers des Clearingsystems bestätigt hat, ohne dass eine Vorlage der Originalbelege oder der die Schuldverschreibungen verbriefenden Globalurkunde in einem solchen Verfahren erforderlich wäre oder (iii) auf jede andere Weise, die im Lande der Geltendmachung prozessual zulässig ist. Für die Zwecke des Vorstehenden bezeichnet "Depotbank" jede Bank oder ein sonstiges anerkanntes Finanzinstitut, das berechtigt ist, das Wertpapierverwahrungsgeschäft zu betreiben und bei der/dem der Gläubiger ein Wertpapierdepot für die Schuldverschreibungen unterhält, einschließlich des Clearingsystems.

[§ 15]

SPRACHE

Falls die Anleihebedingungen in deutscher Sprache mit einer Übersetzung in die englische Sprache abgefasst sind, ist folgendes anwendbar

[Diese Anleihebedingungen sind in deutscher Sprache abgefasst. Eine Übersetzung in die englische Sprache ist beigelegt. Der deutsche Text ist bindend und maßgeblich. Die Übersetzung in die englische Sprache ist unverbindlich.]

Falls die Anleihebedingungen in englischer Sprache mit einer

[Diese Anleihebedingungen sind in englischer Sprache abgefasst. Eine Übersetzung in die deutsche Sprache ist beigelegt. Der englische Text ist bindend und maßgeblich. Die Übersetzung in die deutsche Sprache ist unverbindlich.]

Übersetzung in die deutsche Sprache abgefasst sind, ist folgendes anwendbar

Falls die Anleihebedingungen ausschließlich in deutscher Sprache abgefasst sind, ist folgendes anwendbar

[Diese Anleihebedingungen sind ausschließlich in deutscher Sprache abgefasst.]

Falls die Anleihebedingungen ausschließlich in englischer Sprache abgefasst sind, ist folgendes anwendbar

[Diese Anleihebedingungen sind ausschließlich in englischer Sprache abgefasst.]

⁽¹⁾**[MiFID II Product Governance** – Solely for the purposes of [the/each] manufacturer's product approval process, the target market assessment in respect of the Notes has led to the conclusion that: (i) the target market for the Notes is eligible counterparties[,][and] professional clients [and retail clients], each as defined in Directive 2014/65/EU (as amended, "**MiFID II**") [and [●]]; **[EITHER**⁽²⁾: and (ii) all channels for distribution of the Notes are appropriate, including investment advice, portfolio management, non-advised sales and pure execution services] **[OR**⁽³⁾: (ii) all channels for distribution to eligible counterparties and professional clients are appropriate; and (iii) the following channels for distribution of the Notes to retail clients are appropriate - investment advice[,][and] portfolio management[,][and] [non-advised sales] [and pure execution services]], subject to the distributor's suitability and appropriateness obligations under MiFID II, as applicable]]. Any person subsequently offering, selling or recommending the Notes (a "**distributor**") should take into consideration the manufacturer[^(s)]'s target market assessment; however, a distributor subject to MiFID II is responsible for undertaking its own target market assessment in respect of the Notes (by either adopting or refining the manufacturer[^(s)]'s target market assessment) and determining appropriate distribution channels[, subject to the distributor's suitability and appropriateness obligations under MiFID II, as applicable].⁽⁴⁾]

[PROHIBITION OF SALES TO EEA RETAIL INVESTORS – The Notes are not intended to be offered, sold or otherwise made available to and should not be offered, sold or otherwise made available to any retail investor in the European Economic Area ("**EEA**"). For these purposes, a retail investor means a person who is one (or more) of: (i) a retail client as defined in point (11) of Article 4(1) of MiFID II; (ii) a customer within the meaning of Directive 2002/92/EC (as amended, the "**Insurance Mediation Directive**"), where that customer would not qualify as a professional client as defined in point (10) of Article 4(1) of MiFID II; or (iii) not a qualified investor as defined in Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended, the "**Prospectus Directive**"). Consequently no key information document required by Regulation (EU) No 1286/2014 (as amended, the "**PRIPs Regulation**") for offering or selling the Notes or otherwise making them available to retail investors in the EEA has been prepared and therefore offering or selling the Notes or otherwise making them available to any retail investor in the EEA may be unlawful under the PRIPs Regulation.]⁽⁵⁾

In case of Notes listed on the official list of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange and admitted to trading on the regulated market of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange or publicly offered in the Grand Duchy of Luxembourg, the Final Terms of Notes will be displayed on the website of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange (www.bourse.lu). In the case of Notes listed on any other stock exchange or publicly offered in one or more member states of the European Economic Area other than the Grand Duchy of Luxembourg, the Final Terms will be displayed on the website of Bertelsmann Group (<http://www.bertelsmann.com/investor-relations/bonds/debt-issuance-programme/>).

⁽¹⁾ Include this legend if parties have determined a target market.

Diese Erklärung einfügen, wenn die Parteien einen Zielmarkt bestimmt haben.

⁽²⁾ Include for notes that are not ESMA complex pursuant to the Guidelines on complex debt instruments and structured deposits (ESMA/2015/1787) (the "**ESMA Guidelines**") (i.e. Notes the Terms and Conditions of which do not provide for a put and/or call right).

*Einfügen für Schuldverschreibungen, die nicht nach den Leitlinien zu komplexen Schuldtiteln und strukturierten Einlagen (ESMA/2015/1787) (die "**ESMA Leitlinien**") ESMA komplex sind (also, Schuldverschreiben deren Anleihebedingungen keine Kündigungsrechte seitens der Emittentin und/oder der Anleihegläubiger enthalten).*

⁽³⁾ Include for notes that are ESMA complex pursuant to the ESMA Guidelines. This list may need to be amended, for example, if advised sales are deemed necessary. If there are advised sales, a determination of suitability and appropriateness will be necessary. In addition, if the Notes constitute "complex" products, pure execution services to retail clients are not permitted without the need to make the determination of appropriateness required under Article 25(3) of MiFID II.

Einfügen im Fall von Schuldverschreibungen, die nach den ESMA Leitlinien ESMA komplex sind. Diese Liste muss gegebenenfalls angepasst werden, z.B. wenn Anlageberatung für erforderlich gehalten wird. Im Fall der Anlageberatung ist die Bestimmung der Geeignetheit und Angemessenheit notwendig. Wenn die Schuldverschreibungen "komplexe" Produkte sind, ist außerdem die bloße Ausführung von Kundenaufträgen von Privatanlegern ohne Bestimmung der Angemessenheit nach Art. 25(3) MiFID II nicht zulässig.

⁽⁴⁾ If there are advised sales, a determination of suitability will be necessary.

Im Fall von Beratungsverkäufen ist eine Angemessenheitsprüfung erforderlich.

⁽⁵⁾ Include this legend if "Applicable" is specified in Part II. C.4 of the Final Terms regarding item "Prohibition of Sales to EEA Retail Investors".

Diese Erklärung einfügen, wenn "Anwendbar" im Teil II. C.4 der Endgültigen Bedingungen im Hinblick auf den Punkt "Verbot des Verkaufs an EWR Privatanleger" ausgewählt wurde.

FORM OF FINAL TERMS
(Muster – Endgültige Bedingungen)

[Date]
[Datum]

Final Terms
Endgültige Bedingungen

BERTELSMANN SE & CO. KGAA

[Title of relevant Tranche of Notes]
[Bezeichnung der betreffenden Tranche der Schuldverschreibungen]

Series No.: [] / Tranche No.: []
Serien Nr.: [] / Tranche Nr.: []

Issue Date: []
Valutierungstag: []

issued pursuant to the EUR 4,000,000,000 Debt Issuance Programme dated on 18 April 2018
begeben aufgrund des EUR 4.000.000.000 Debt Issuance Programme vom 18. April 2018

Important Notice

These Final Terms have been prepared for purposes of Article 5(4) of the Directive 2003/71/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 4 November 2003, as amended, and must be read in conjunction with the Debt Issuance Programme Prospectus pertaining to the Programme dated 18 April 2018 (the "**Prospectus**") [and the supplement(s) dated [●]]. The Prospectus and any supplements to the Prospectus are available for viewing in electronic form on the website of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange (www.bourse.lu), on the website of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA (<http://www.bertelsmann.com/investor-relations/bonds/debt-issuance-programme/>) and copies may be obtained from Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA, Carl-Bertelsmann-Straße, 33311 Güterloh, Federal Republic of Germany. Full information is only available on the basis of the combination of the Prospectus, any supplement and these Final Terms. [A summary of the individual issue of the Notes is annexed to these Final Terms.]⁶

Wichtiger Hinweis

*Diese Endgültigen Bedingungen wurden für Zwecke des Artikels 5 Absatz 4 der Richtlinie 2003/71/EG des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 4. November 2003, in der jeweils geänderten Fassung, abgefasst und sind in Verbindung mit dem Debt Issuance Programm Prospekt vom 18. April 2018 über das Programm (der "**Prospekt**") [und dem(den) Nachtrag(Nachträgen) dazu vom [●]] zu lesen. Der Prospekt (sowie etwaige Nachträge) können in elektronischer Form auf der Internetseite der Luxemburger Börse (www.bourse.lu) und der Internetseite der Bertelsmann AG (<http://www.bertelsmann.de/investor-relations/anleihen/debt-issuance-programme/>) eingesehen werden. Kopien des Prospekts sind erhältlich bei Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA Carl-Bertelsmann-Straße, 33311 Güterloh, Bundesrepublik Deutschland. Um sämtliche Angaben zu erhalten, sind die Endgültigen Bedingungen, der Prospekt und etwaige Nachträge im Zusammenhang zu lesen. [Eine Zusammenfassung der einzelnen Emission der Schuldverschreibungen ist diesen Endgültigen Bedingungen angefügt.]¹*

⁶ Not applicable in the case of an issue of Notes with a minimum denomination of at least EUR 100,000.
Nicht anwendbar im Fall einer Emission von Schuldverschreibungen mit einer Mindeststückelung in Höhe von mindestens EUR 100.000.

Part I.: TERMS AND CONDITIONS
Teil I.: ANLEIHEBEDINGUNGEN

[A. In the case the options applicable to the relevant Tranche of Notes are to be determined by replicating the relevant provisions set forth in the Prospectus as Option I or Option II including certain further options contained therein, respectively, and completing the relevant placeholders, insert:⁷

A. Falls die für die betreffende Tranche von Schuldverschreibungen geltenden Optionen durch Wiederholung der betreffenden im Prospekt als Option I oder Option II aufgeführten Angaben (einschließlich der jeweils enthaltenen bestimmten weiteren Optionen) bestimmt und die betreffenden Leerstellen vervollständigt werden, einfügen.²

The Terms and Conditions applicable to the Notes (the "**Conditions**") [and the [German] [English] language translation thereof,] are as set out below.

*Die für die Schuldverschreibungen geltenden Anleihebedingungen (die "**Bedingungen**") [sowie die [deutschsprachige][englischsprachige] Übersetzung] sind wie nachfolgend aufgeführt.*

[in the case of Notes with fixed interest rates replicate here the relevant provisions of Option I including relevant further options contained therein, and complete relevant placeholders]

[im Fall von Schuldverschreibungen mit fester Verzinsung hier die betreffenden Angaben der Option I (einschließlich der betreffenden weiteren Optionen) wiederholen und betreffende Leerstellen vervollständigen]

[in the case of Notes with floating interest rates replicate here the relevant provisions of Option II including relevant further options contained therein, and complete relevant placeholders]

[im Fall von Schuldverschreibungen mit variabler Verzinsung hier die betreffenden Angaben der Option II (einschließlich der betreffenden weiteren Optionen) wiederholen und betreffende Leerstellen vervollständigen]]

[B. In the case the options applicable to the relevant Tranche of Notes are to be determined by referring to the relevant provisions set forth in the Prospectus as Option I or Option II including certain further options contained therein, respectively, insert:

B. Falls die für die betreffende Tranche von Schuldverschreibungen geltenden Optionen, die durch Verweisung auf die betreffenden im Prospekt als Option I oder Option II aufgeführten Angaben (einschließlich der jeweils enthaltenen bestimmten weiteren Optionen) bestimmt werden, einfügen:

This Part I. of the Final Terms is to be read in conjunction with the set of Terms and Conditions that apply to Notes with [fixed] [floating] interest rates (the "**Terms and Conditions**") set forth in the Prospectus as [Option I] [Option II]. Capitalised terms shall have the meanings specified in the Terms and Conditions.

*Dieser Teil I. der Endgültigen Bedingungen ist in Verbindung mit dem Satz der Anleihebedingungen, der auf Schuldverschreibungen mit [fester] [variabler] Verzinsung Anwendung findet (die "**Anleihebedingungen**"), zu lesen, der als [Option I] [Option II] im Prospekt enthalten ist. Begriffe, die in den Anleihebedingungen definiert sind, haben dieselbe Bedeutung, wenn sie in diesen Endgültigen Bedingungen verwendet werden.*

All references in this Part I. of the Final Terms to numbered paragraphs and subparagraphs are to paragraphs and subparagraphs of the Terms and Conditions.

Bezugnahmen in diesem Teil I. der Endgültigen Bedingungen auf Paragraphen und Absätze beziehen sich auf die Paragraphen und Absätze der Anleihebedingungen.

⁷ To be determined in consultation with the Issuer. It is anticipated that this type of documenting the Conditions will be required where the Notes are to be offered to the public, in whole or in part, or to be initially distributed, in whole or in part, to non-qualified investors. Delete all references to B. Part I of the Final Terms including numbered paragraphs and subparagraphs of the Terms and Conditions.

In Abstimmung mit der Emittentin festzulegen. Es ist vorgesehen, dass diese Form der Dokumentation der Bedingungen erforderlich ist, wenn die Schuldverschreibungen insgesamt oder teilweise anfänglich an nicht qualifizierte Anleger verkauft oder öffentlich angeboten werden. Alle Bezugnahmen auf B. Teil I der Endgültigen Bedingungen einschließlich der Paragraphen und Absätze der Anleihebedingungen entfernen.

The blanks in the provisions of the Terms and Conditions, which are applicable to the Notes shall be deemed to be completed by the information contained in the Final Terms as if such information were inserted in the blanks of such provisions. All provisions in the Terms and Conditions corresponding to items in these Final Terms which are either not selected or not completed or which are deleted shall be deemed to be deleted from the Terms and Conditions applicable to the Notes (the "**Conditions**").

*Die Leerstellen in den auf die Schuldverschreibungen anwendbaren Bestimmungen der Anleihebedingungen gelten als durch die in den Endgültigen Bedingungen enthaltenen Angaben ausgefüllt, als ob die Leerstellen in den betreffenden Bestimmungen durch diese Angaben ausgefüllt wären. Sämtliche Bestimmungen der Anleihebedingungen, die sich auf Variablen dieser Endgültigen Bedingungen beziehen, die weder angekreuzt noch ausgefüllt oder die gestrichen werden, gelten als in den auf die Schuldverschreibungen anwendbaren Anleihebedingungen (die "**Bedingungen**") gestrichen.*

CURRENCY, DENOMINATION, FORM, CERTAIN DEFINITIONS (§ 1)
WÄHRUNG, STÜCKELUNG, FORM, DEFINITIONEN (§ 1)

Currency and Denomination⁸
Währung und Stückelung

Specified Currency <i>Festgelegte Währung</i>	[]
Aggregate Principal Amount <i>Gesamtnennbetrag</i>	[]
Aggregate Principal Amount in words <i>Gesamtnennbetrag in Worten</i>	[]
Specified Denomination <i>Festgelegte Stückelung</i>	[]

Clearing System
Clearingsystem

- Clearstream Banking AG
- Euroclear Bank SA/NV
- Clearstream Banking société anonyme

Global Note⁹
Globalurkunde

- New Global Note
- Classical Global Note

⁸ The minimum denomination of the Notes will be, if in euro, EUR 1,000, or, if in any currency other than euro, in an amount in such other currency nearly equivalent to EUR 1,000 at the time of the issue of the Notes.

Die Mindeststückelung der Schuldverschreibungen beträgt EUR 1.000, bzw. falls die Schuldverschreibungen in einer anderen Währung als Euro begeben werden, einem Betrag in dieser anderen Währung, der zur Zeit der Begebung der Schuldverschreibungen dem Gegenwert von EUR 1.000 annähernd entspricht.

⁹ Complete for Notes kept in custody on behalf of the ICSDs.

Im Fall von Schuldverschreibungen, die im Namen der ICSDs verwahrt werden, ausfüllen.

INTEREST (§ 3)
ZINSEN (§ 3)

Fixed Rate Notes (Option I)
Festverzinsliche Schuldverschreibungen (Option I)

Rate of Interest and Interest Payment Dates
Zinssatz und Zinszahlungstage

Rate of Interest [] per cent. per annum
Zinssatz []% per annum

Interest Commencement Date []
Verzinsungsbeginn

Fixed Interest Date(s) []
Festzinstermine

First Interest Payment Date []
Erster Zinszahlungstag

Initial Broken Amount (for the Specified Denomination) []
Anfänglicher Bruchteilzinsbetrag (für die festgelegte
Stückelung)

Fixed Interest Date preceding the Maturity Date []
Festzinstermine, die dem Fälligkeitstag vorangehen

Final Broken Amount (for the Specified Denomination) []
Abschließender Bruchteilzinsbetrag (für die
festgelegte Stückelung)

Floating Rate Notes (Option II)
Variabel verzinsliche Schuldverschreibungen (Option II)

Interest Payment Dates
Zinszahlungstage

Interest Commencement Date []
Verzinsungsbeginn

Specified Interest Payment Dates []
Festgelegte Zinszahlungstage

Specified Interest Period(s) [number] [weeks][months]
Festgelegte Zinsperiode(n) [Zahl] [Wochen][Monate]

Business Day Convention
Geschäftstagskonvention

Modified Following Business Day Convention
Modifizierte folgender Geschäftstag-Konvention

FRN Convention (specify period(s)) [number] [months]
FRN Konvention (Zeitraum angeben) [Zahl] [Monate]

Following Business Day Convention
Folgender Geschäftstag-Konvention

Preceding Business Day Convention
Vorangegangener Geschäftstag-Konvention

Business Day
Geschäftstag

[]

- relevant financial centre(s)
relevante(s) Finanzzentrum(en)
- TARGET
TARGET

Rate of Interest
Zinssatz

- EURIBOR
EURIBOR
- LIBOR Interest Determination Date [first] [second] **[relevant financial centre(s)]** Business Day
prior to commencement of Interest Period
LIBOR Zinsfestlegungstag [erster] [zweiter] [relevante(s) Finanzzentrum(en)] Geschäftstag
vor Beginn der jeweiligen Zinsperiode

Screen page
Bildschirmseite

[LIBOR01][LIBOR02]
[LIBOR01][LIBOR02]

Margin
Marge

[] per cent. per annum
[]% per annum

- plus
plus
- minus
minus

Minimum and Maximum Rate of Interest
Mindest- und Höchstzinssatz

- Minimum Rate of Interest
Mindestzinssatz [] per cent. per annum
[]% per annum
- Maximum Rate of Interest
Höchstzinssatz [] per cent. per annum
[]% per annum

Day Count Fraction¹⁰
Zinstagequotient

- Actual/Actual (ICMA Rule 251)
Actual/Actual (ICMA Regel 251)
 - annual interest payment (excluding the case of short or long coupons)
jährliche Zinszahlung (ausschließlich des Falls von kurzen oder langen Kupons)
 - annual interest payment (including the case of short coupons)

¹⁰ Complete for all Notes.
Für alle Schuldverschreibungen auszufüllen.

jährliche Zinszahlung (einschließlich des Falls von kurzen Kupons)

- two or more constant interest periods within an interest year (including the case of short coupons)
zwei oder mehr gleichbleibende Zinsperioden (einschließlich des Falls von kurzen Kupons)
- calculation period is longer than one reference period (long coupon)
Zinsberechnungszeitraum ist länger als eine Bezugsperiode (langer Kupon)
- reference period
Bezugsperiode
Deemed Interest Payment Date []
Fiktiver Zinszahlungstag

- Actual/Actual (ISDA)
- Actual/365 (Fixed)
- Actual/360
- 30/360 or 360/360 (Bond Basis)
- 30E/360 (Eurobond Basis)

PAYMENTS (§ 4)
ZAHLUNGEN (§ 4)

Payment Business Day¹¹
Zahlungstag

- Relevant financial centre(s) []
Relevante(s) Finanzzentrum(en)
- TARGET
TARGET

REDEMPTION (§ 5)
RÜCKZAHLUNG (§ 5)

Redemption at Maturity
Rückzahlung bei Endfälligkeit

Maturity Date¹² []
Fälligkeitstag

¹¹ Complete for fixed rate Notes.
Für fest verzinsliche Schuldverschreibungen auszufüllen.

¹² Complete for fixed rate Notes
Für fest verzinsliche Schuldverschreibungen auszufüllen

Redemption Month¹³ []
Rückzahlungsmonat

Early Redemption
Vorzeitige Rückzahlung

Early Redemption at the Option of the Issuer at Specified Call Redemption Amount(s)¹⁴ [Yes/No]
[Ja/Nein]
Vorzeitige Rückzahlung nach Wahl der Emittentin zu festgelegtem(n) Wahlrückzahlungsbetrag/-beträgen (Call)

Call Redemption Period(s) []
Wahl-Rückzahlungszeitraum(räume) (Call)

Call Redemption Amount(s) []
Wahlrückzahlungsbetrag/-beträge

Minimum Notice¹⁵ []
Mindestkündigungsfrist

Maximum Notice []
Höchstkündigungsfrist

Early Redemption at the Option of the Issuer at Final Redemption Amount⁽¹⁶⁾ [Yes/No]
[Ja/Nein]
Vorzeitige Rückzahlung nach Wahl der Emittentin zum Rückzahlungsbetrag (Call)

Interest payment date [number] years after the Interest Commencement Date
and each Interest Payment Date thereafter
Zinszahlungstag [Zahl] Jahre nach dem Verzinsungsbeginn
und an jedem Zinszahlungstag danach

Early Redemption at the Option of a Holder at Specified Put Redemption Amount(s)¹⁷ [Yes/No]
[Ja/Nein]
Vorzeitige Rückzahlung nach Wahl des Gläubigers zu festgelegtem(n) Wahlrückzahlungsbetrag/-beträgen (Put)

Put Redemption Date(s) []
Wahlrückzahlungstag(e)

Put Redemption Amount(s) []
Wahlrückzahlungsbetrag/-beträge

Minimum Notice¹⁵ [] days
Mindestkündigungsfrist [] Tage

¹³ Complete for floating rate Notes
Für variabel verzinsliche Schuldverschreibungen auszufüllen

¹⁴ Complete for fixed rate Notes
Für fest verzinsliche Schuldverschreibungen auszufüllen

¹⁵ Euroclear requires a minimum notice period of 5 days.
Euroclear verlangt eine Mindestkündigungsfrist von 5 Tagen.

¹⁶ Complete for floating rate Notes
Für variabel verzinsliche Schuldverschreibungen auszufüllen

¹⁷ Complete for fixed rate Notes
Für fest verzinsliche Schuldverschreibungen auszufüllen

Maximum Notice (never more than 60 days)
Höchstkündigungsfrist (nie mehr als 60 Tage)

[] days
[] Tage

Early Redemption for Reasons of a Change of Control
Vorzeitige Rückzahlung aufgrund eines Kontrollwechsels

[Yes/No]
[Ja/Nein]

FISCAL AGENT [,] [AND] PAYING AGENTS [AND CALCULATION AGENT] (§ 6)
EMISSIONSSTELLE [,] [UND] ZAHLSTELLEN [UND BERECHNUNGSSTELLE] (§ 6)

Calculation Agent
Berechnungsstelle

Yes/No
Ja/Nein

- Fiscal Agent
Emissionsstelle
- Other (specify)
sonstige (angeben)

[]

AMENDMENT OF THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS; HOLDERS' REPRESENTATIVE (§ 11)
ÄNDERUNG DER ANLEIHEBEDINGUNGEN, GEMEINSAMER VERTRETER (§ 11)

- Applicable
Anwendbar
- Appointment of a Holders' Representative by resolution passed by Holders and not in the Terms and Conditions
Bestellung eines gemeinsamen Vertreters der Gläubiger durch Beschluss der Gläubiger und nicht in den Anleihebedingungen
- Appointment of a Holders' Representative in the Terms and Conditions
Bestellung eines gemeinsamen Vertreters der Gläubiger in den Anleihebedingungen

Name and address of the Holders' Representative
Name und Anschrift des Gemeinsamen Vertreters

[Specify details]
[Details einfügen]

- Not applicable
Nicht anwendbar

NOTICES (§[13])
MITTEILUNGEN (§ [13])

Place and medium of publication
Ort und Medium der Bekanntmachung

- Website of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange (www.bourse.lu)
Internetseite der Wertpapierbörse Luxemburg (www.bourse.lu)
- Clearing System
Clearingsystem

LANGUAGE OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS¹⁸ (§ [15])
SPRACHE DER ANLEIHEBEDINGUNGEN (§ [15])

- German and English (German controlling)
Deutsch und Englisch (deutscher Text maßgeblich)
- English and German (English controlling)
Englisch und Deutsch (englischer Text maßgeblich)
- English only
Ausschließlich Englisch
- German only¹⁹
Ausschließlich Deutsch]

Part II.: OTHER INFORMATION²⁰
Teil II.: ZUSÄTZLICHE INFORMATIONEN

A. Essential information
Grundlegende Angaben

Interests of natural and legal persons involved in the issue/offer
Interessen von Seiten natürlicher und juristischer Personen,
die an der Emission/dem Angebot beteiligt sind

- As far as the Issuer
is aware, no person involved in the offer of the Notes has an interest material to the offer, except that certain Dealers and their affiliates may be customers of, and borrowers from the Issuer and its affiliates. In addition, certain Dealers and their affiliates have engaged, and may in the future engage, in investment banking and/or commercial banking transactions with, and may perform services for the Issuer and its affiliates in the ordinary course of business.
Nach Kenntnis der Emittentin bestehen bei den an der Emission beteiligten Personen keine Interessen, die für das Angebot bedeutsam sind, außer, dass bestimmte Platzeure und mit ihnen verbundene Unternehmen Kunden von und Kreditnehmer der

¹⁸ To be determined in consultation with the Issuer. It is anticipated that, subject to any stock exchange or legal requirements applicable from time to time, and unless otherwise agreed, in the case of Notes publicly offered, in whole or in part, in Germany, or distributed, in whole or in part, to non-qualified investors in Germany, German will be the controlling language. If, in the event of such public offer or distribution to non-qualified investors, however, English is chosen as the controlling language, a German language translation of the Conditions will be available from the principal office of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA.

In Abstimmung mit der Emittentin festzulegen. Es wird erwartet, dass vorbehaltlich geltender Börsen- oder anderer Bestimmungen und soweit nicht anders vereinbart, die deutsche Sprache für Schuldverschreibungen maßgeblich sein wird, die insgesamt oder teilweise öffentlich zum Verkauf in Deutschland angeboten oder an nicht qualifizierte Anleger in Deutschland verkauft werden. Falls bei einem solchen öffentlichen Verkaufsangebot oder Verkauf an nicht qualifizierte Anleger die englische Sprache als maßgeblich bestimmt wird, wird eine deutschsprachige Übersetzung der Bedingungen bei der Hauptgeschäftsstelle der Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA erhältlich sein.

¹⁹ Use only in the case of Notes not publicly offered and/or not intended to be listed on any regulated market within the European Economic Area.
Nur im Fall Schuldverschreibungen zu nutzen, die nicht öffentlich angeboten und nicht am regulierten Markt innerhalb des Europäischen Wirtschaftsraums zum Handel zugelassen werden sollen.

²⁰ There is no obligation to complete Part II. of the Final Terms in its entirety in case of Notes with a Specified Denomination of at least EUR 100,000 or its equivalent in any other currency, provided that such Notes will not be listed on any regulated market within the European Economic Area. To be completed in consultation with the Issuer.
Es besteht keine Verpflichtung, Teil II. der Endgültigen Bedingungen bei Schuldverschreibungen mit einer festgelegten Stückelung von mindestens EUR 100.000 oder dem Gegenwert in einer anderen Währung vollständig auszufüllen, sofern diese Schuldverschreibungen nicht an einem geregelten Markt innerhalb des Europäischen Wirtschaftsraums zum Handel zugelassen werden. In Absprache mit der Emittentin auszufüllen.

Emittentin und mit ihr verbundener Unternehmen sein können. Außerdem sind bestimmte Platzeure an Investment Banking Transaktionen und/oder Commercial Banking Transaktionen mit der Emittentin beteiligt, oder könnten sich in Zukunft daran beteiligen, und könnten im gewöhnlichen Geschäftsverkehr Dienstleistungen für die Emittentin und mit ihr verbundene Unternehmen erbringen.

- Other interest (specify) [Specify details]
[Einzelheiten einfügen]
Andere Interessen (angeben)

Reasons for the offer and use of proceeds²¹ [Specify details]
[Einzelheiten einfügen]
Gründe für das Angebot und Verwendung der Erträge

Estimated net proceeds²² []
Geschätzter Nettobetrag der Erträge

Estimated total expenses of the issue []
Geschätzte Gesamtkosten der Emission

Eurosystem eligibility
EZB-Fähigkeit

- Intended to be held in a manner which would allow Eurosystem eligibility (NGN)
Soll in EZB-fähiger Weise gehalten werden (NGN)
- Intended to be held in a manner which would allow Eurosystem eligibility (CGN)²³
Soll in EZB-fähiger Weise gehalten werden (CGN)
- Not applicable
Nicht anwendbar

[Note that the designation "yes" in the case of an NGN means that the Notes are intended upon issue to be deposited with one of the ICSDs as common safekeeper and does not necessarily mean that the Notes will be recognised as eligible collateral for Eurosystem monetary policy and intra-day credit operations by the Eurosystem either upon issue or at any or all times during their life. Such recognition will depend upon satisfaction of the Eurosystem eligibility criteria.]

[Whilst the designation is specified as "no" at the date of these Final Terms, should the Eurosystem eligibility criteria be amended in the future such that the Notes are capable of meeting them the Notes in the case of an NGN may then be deposited with one of the ICSDs as common safekeeper. Note that this does not necessarily mean that the Notes will then be recognised as eligible collateral for Eurosystem monetary policy and intra day credit operations by the Eurosystem at any time during their life. Such recognition will depend upon the ECB being satisfied that Eurosystem eligibility criteria have been met.]

²¹ Not required for Notes with a Specified Denomination of at least EUR 100,000. See "Use of Proceeds" wording in the Prospectus. If reasons for the offer are different from making profit and/or hedging certain risks include those reasons here.

Nicht erforderlich für Schuldverschreibungen mit einer festgelegten Stückelung von mindestens EUR 100.000. Siehe "Use of Proceeds" im Prospekt. Sofern die Gründe für das Angebot nicht in der Gewinnerzielung und/oder der Absicherung bestimmter Risiken bestehen, sind die Gründe hier anzugeben.

²² If proceeds are intended for more than one use will need to split out and present in order of priority. *Sofern die Erträge für verschiedene Verwendungszwecke bestimmt sind, sind diese aufzuschlüsseln und nach der Priorität der Verwendungszwecke darzustellen.*

²³ This means that the Notes are intended upon issue to be deposited with CBF. This does not necessarily mean that the Notes will be recognised as eligible collateral by the Eurosystem either upon issue or at any or all times during their life. Such recognition will depend upon satisfaction of the Eurosystem eligibility criteria.

Dies bedeutet, dass die Schuldverschreibungen nach ihrer Begebung von CBF verwahrt werden müssen. Es bedeutet nicht notwendigerweise, dass die Schuldverschreibungen bei ihrer Begebung, zu irgendeinem Zeitpunkt während ihrer Laufzeit oder während ihrer gesamten Laufzeit als EZB-fähige Sicherheiten anerkannt werden. Eine solche Anerkennung hängt davon ab, ob die Zulässigkeitskriterien des Eurosystems erfüllt sind.

[Es wird darauf hingewiesen, dass "ja" im Fall einer NGN hier lediglich bedeutet, dass die Schuldverschreibungen nach ihrer Begebung bei einem der ICSDs als gemeinsamen Verwahrer verwahrt werden; es bedeutet nicht notwendigerweise, dass die Schuldverschreibungen bei ihrer Begebung, zu irgendeinem Zeitpunkt während ihrer Laufzeit oder während ihrer gesamten Laufzeit als zulässige Sicherheiten für die Zwecke der Geldpolitik oder für Innertageskredite des Eurosystems anerkannt werden. Eine solche Anerkennung ist abhängig davon, ob die Zulassungskriterien des Eurosystems erfüllt sind.]

[Auch wenn die Bezeichnung mit Datum dieser Endgültigen Bedingungen "nein" lautet, sollten die Zulassungskriterien des Eurosystems sich zukünftig dergestalt ändern, dass die Schuldverschreibungen diese erfüllen können, könnten die Schuldverschreibungen im Fall einer NGN dann bei einem der ICSDs als gemeinsamen Verwahrer verwahrt werden. Es wird darauf hingewiesen, dass dies jedoch nicht notwendigerweise bedeutet, dass die Schuldverschreibungen dann zu irgendeinem Zeitpunkt während ihrer Laufzeit als zulässige Sicherheiten für die Zwecke der Geldpolitik oder für Innertageskredite des Eurosystems anerkannt werden. Eine solche Anerkennung ist abhängig davon, ob die Zulassungskriterien des Eurosystems erfüllt sind.]

B. Information concerning the securities to be offered/admitted to trading
Informationen über die anzubietenden bzw. zum Handel zuzulassenden Wertpapiere

Securities Identification Numbers
Wertpapier-Kenn-Nummern

Common Code Common Code	[]
ISIN Code ISIN Code	[]
German Securities Code Deutsche Wertpapier-Kenn-Nummer (WKN)	[]
Any other securities number Sonstige Wertpapier-Kenn-Nummer	[]

Historic Interest Rates and further performance as well as volatility²⁴
Zinssätze der Vergangenheit und künftige Entwicklungen sowie ihre Volatilität

Details of historic [EURIBOR][LIBOR] rates and the further performance as well as their volatility can be obtained from [Not applicable][Reuters [EURIBOR01][LIBOR01][LIBOR02]] Einzelheiten zu vergangenen [EURIBOR][LIBOR] Sätzen und Informationen über künftige Entwicklungen sowie ihre Volatilität können abgerufen werden unter [Nicht anwendbar][Reuters [EURIBOR01][LIBOR01][LIBOR02]]

Description of any market disruption or settlement disruption events that effect the [EURIBOR][LIBOR] rates [Not applicable][Please see § 3 of the Terms and Conditions] Beschreibung etwaiger Ereignisse, die eine Störung des Marktes oder der Abrechnung bewirken und die [EURIBOR][LIBOR] Sätze beeinflussen [Nicht anwendbar][Bitte siehe § 3 der Anleihebedingungen]

Yield to final Maturity²⁵ [] per cent.
Rendite bei Endfälligkeit []%

²⁴ Only applicable for Floating Rate Notes. Not required for Notes with a Specified Denomination of at least EUR 100,000. Nur bei variabel verzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen anwendbar. Nicht anwendbar auf Schuldverschreibungen mit einer festgelegten Stückelung von mindestens EUR 100.000.

²⁵ Only applicable for Fixed Rate Notes. Nur bei festverzinslichen Schuldverschreibungen anwendbar.

Representation of debt security holders including an identification of the organisation representing the investors and provisions applying to such representation. Indication of where the public may have access to the contracts relation to these forms of representation²⁶ [Not applicable] [Specify details]

Vertretung der Schuldtitelinhaber unter Angabe der die Anleger vertretenden Organisation und der für diese Vertretung geltenden Bestimmungen. Angabe des Ortes, an dem die Öffentlichkeit die Verträge, die diese Repräsentationsformen regeln, einsehen kann [Nicht anwendbar] [Einzelheiten einfügen]

C. Terms and Conditions of the Offer²⁷
Bedingungen und Konditionen des Angebots

C.1 Conditions, offer statistics, expected timetable and actions required to apply for the offer [Not applicable]
Bedingungen, Angebotsstatistiken, erwarteter Zeitplan und erforderliche Maßnahmen für die Antragstellung [Nicht anwendbar]

Conditions to which the offer is subject [Specify details]
Bedingungen, denen das Angebot unterliegt [Einzelheiten einfügen]

Total amount of the offer; if the amount is not fixed, description of the arrangements and time for announcing to the public the definitive amount of the offer [Specify details]
Gesamtsumme des Angebots; wenn die Summe nicht feststeht Beschreibung der Vereinbarungen und des Zeitpunkts für die Ankündigung des endgültigen Angebotsbetrags an das Publikum [Einzelheiten einfügen]

Time period, including any possible amendments, during which the offer will be open and description of the application process [Specify details]
Frist – einschließlich etwaiger Änderungen – während der das Angebot vorliegt und Beschreibung des Prozesses für die Umsetzung des Angebots [Einzelheiten einfügen]

A description of the possibility to reduce subscriptions and the manner for refunding excess amount paid by applicants [Specify details]
Beschreibung der Möglichkeit zur Reduzierung der Zeichnungen und der Art und Weise der Erstattung des zu viel gezahlten Betrags an die Zeichner [Einzelheiten einfügen]

Details of the minimum and/or maximum amount of application, (whether in number of notes or aggregate amount to invest) [Specify details]
Einzelheiten zum Mindest- und/oder Höchstbetrag der Zeichnung (entweder in Form der Anzahl der Schuldverschreibungen oder des aggregierten zu investierenden Betrags) [Einzelheiten einfügen]

Method and time limits for paying up the notes and for delivery of the notes [Specify details]
Methode und Fristen für die Bedienung der Wertpapiere und ihre Lieferung [Einzelheiten einfügen]

Manner and date in which results of the offer are to be made public [Specify details]
Art und Weise und Termin, auf die bzw. an dem die Ergebnisse des Angebots offen zu legen sind [Einzelheiten einfügen]

The procedure for the exercise of any right of pre-emption, the negotiability of subscription rights and the treatment of subscription rights not exercised. [Specify details]
Verfahren für die Ausübung eines etwaigen Vorzugsrechts, die Marktfähigkeit der Zeichnungsrechte und die Behandlung der nicht ausgeübten Zeichnungsrechte [Einzelheiten einfügen]

²⁶ Specify further details in the case a Holders' Representative will be appointed in § 11 of the Conditions.
Weitere Einzelheiten für den Fall einfügen, dass § 11 der Bedingungen einen Gemeinsamen Vertreter bestellt.

²⁷ Complete with respect to an offer of Notes to the public with a Specified Denomination of less than EUR 100,000,.
Bei öffentlichem Angebot von Schuldverschreibungen mit einer festgelegten Stückelung von weniger als EUR 100.000 auszufüllen.

C.2 Plan of distribution and allotment²⁸ [Not applicable]
Plan für die Aufteilung der Wertpapiere und deren Zuteilung [Nicht anwendbar]

If the Offer is being made simultaneously in the markets of two or more countries and if a tranche has been or is being reserved for certain of these, indicate such tranche [Specify details]

Erfolgt das Angebot gleichzeitig auf den Märkten zweier oder mehrerer Länder und wurde/ wird eine bestimmte Tranche einigen dieser Märkte vorbehalten, Angabe dieser Tranche [Einzelheiten einfügen]

Process for notification to applicants of the amount allotted and indication whether dealing may begin before notification is made [Specify details]

Verfahren zur Meldung des den Zeichnern zugeteilten Betrags und Angabe, ob eine Aufnahme des Handels vor dem Meldeverfahren möglich ist [Einzelheiten einfügen]

C.3 Pricing²⁹ [Not applicable]
Kursfeststellung [Nicht anwendbar]

Expected price at which the Notes will be offered [Specify details]

Preis zu dem die Schuldverschreibungen voraussichtlich angeboten werden [Einzelheiten einfügen]

Amount of expenses and taxes charged to the subscriber / purchaser [Specify details]

Kosten/Steuern, die dem Zeichner/Käufer in Rechnung gestellt werden [Einzelheiten einfügen]

C.4 Placing and underwriting³⁰
Platzierung und Emission

Name and address of the co-ordinator(s) of the global offer and of single parts of the offer and, to the extent known to the Issuer or the offeror, or the placers in the various countries where the offer takes place. []

Name und Anschrift des Koordinator/der Koordinatoren des globalen Angebots oder einzelner Teile des Angebots und – sofern dem Emittenten oder dem Bieter bekannt – Angaben zu den Platzieren in den einzelnen Ländern des Angebots]

Method of distribution [insert details]
Vertriebsmethode [Einzelheiten einfügen]

Non-syndicated
Nicht syndiziert

Syndicated
Syndiziert

²⁸ Complete with respect to an offer of Notes to the public with a Specified Denomination of less than EUR 100,000.
Bei öffentlichem Angebot von Schuldverschreibungen mit einer festgelegten Stückelung von weniger als EUR 100.000 auszufüllen.

²⁹ Complete with respect to an offer of Notes to the public with a Specified Denomination of less than EUR 100,000.
Bei öffentlichem Angebot von Schuldverschreibungen mit einer festgelegten Stückelung von weniger als EUR 100.000 auszufüllen.

³⁰ Complete with respect to an offer of Notes to the public with a Specified Denomination of less than EUR 100,000.
Bei öffentlichem Angebot von Schuldverschreibungen mit einer festgelegten Stückelung von weniger als EUR 100.000 auszufüllen.

Subscription Agreement³¹**Übernahmevertrag**

Date of Subscription Agreement []
Datum des Übernahmevertrages

Material features of the Subscription Agreement []
Hauptmerkmale des Übernahmevertrages

Management Details including form of commitment³²**Einzelheiten bezüglich des Bankenkonsortiums einschließlich der Art der Übernahme**

Dealer/Management Group (specify) [Specify details]
Platzeur/Bankenkonsortium (angeben) [Einzelheiten einfügen]

Firm commitment []
Feste Zusage

No firm commitment/best efforts arrangements []
Keine feste Zusage/zu den bestmöglichen Bedingungen

Where not all of the issue is underwritten, a statement of the portion not covered. []

Wird die Emission nicht zu Gänze übernommen, Erklärung zum nicht abgedeckten Teil.

Commissions³³ []
Provisionen

Management/Underwriting Commission (specify) []
Management- und Übernahme provision (angeben)

Selling Concession (specify) []
Verkaufsprovision (angeben)

Prohibition of Sales to EEA Retail Investors³⁴ [Applicable]
Verbot des Verkaufs an EWR Privatanleger [Not Applicable]
 [Anwendbar]
 [Nicht anwendbar]

Stabilising Dealer/Manager [insert details/None]
Kursstabilisierender Dealer/Manager [Einzelheiten einfügen/ keiner]

D. Listing(s) and Admission to trading [Yes/No]
Börsenzulassung(en) und Notierungsaufnahme [Ja/Nein]

Regulated Market "Bourse de Luxembourg"
Regulierter Markt "Bourse de Luxembourg"

³¹ Not required for Notes with a Specified Denomination of at least EUR 100,000.

Nicht erforderlich bei Schuldverschreibungen mit einer festgelegten Stückelung von mindestens EUR 100.000.

³² Not required for Notes with a Specified Denomination of at least EUR 100,000.

Nicht erforderlich bei Schuldverschreibungen mit einer festgelegten Stückelung von mindestens EUR 100.000.

³³ To be completed in consultation with the Issuer.

In Abstimmung mit der Emittentin auszuführen.

³⁴ Specify "Applicable" if the Notes may constitute "packaged" products pursuant to PRIIPs Regulation and no key information document will be prepared.

"Anwendbar" wählen, wenn die Schuldverschreibungen als "verpackte Produkte" nach der PRIIPs Verordnung einzuordnen sein könnten und kein Basisinformationsblatt erstellt wird.

Date of admission []
Datum der Zulassung

Estimate of the total expenses related to admission to trading³⁵ []
Geschätzte Gesamtkosten für die Zulassung zum Handel

Regulated markets or equivalent markets on which, to the knowledge of the Issuer, notes of the same class of the notes to be offered or admitted to trading are already admitted to trading³⁶
Angabe sämtlicher regulierter oder gleichwertiger Märkte, auf denen nach Kenntnis der Emittentin Schuldverschreibungen der gleichen Wertpapierkategorie, die zum Handel angeboten oder zugelassen werden sollen, bereits zum Handel zugelassen sind

Luxembourg (Regulated Market "**Bourse de Luxembourg**")
*Luxemburg (Regulierter Markt "**Bourse de Luxembourg**")*

Issue Price [] per cent.
Ausgabepreis [] %

Name and address of the entities which have a firm commitment to act as intermediaries in secondary trading, providing liquidity through bid and offer rates and description of the main terms of their commitment [Not applicable] [Specify details]

Name und Anschrift der Institute, die aufgrund einer festen Zusage als Intermediäre im Sekundärhandel tätig sind und Liquidität mittels Geld- und Briefkursen erwirtschaften, und Beschreibung der Hauptbedingungen der Zusagevereinbarung [Nicht anwendbar] [Einzelheiten einfügen]

E. Additional Information **Zusätzliche Informationen**

Rating³⁷ []
Rating

[Specify whether the relevant rating agency is established in the European Community and is registered or has applied for registration pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 1060/2009 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 September 2009 on credit rating agencies as amended, (the "**CRA Regulation**").]

The European Securities and Markets Authority publishes on its website (<http://www.esma.europa.eu/page/Listregistered-and-certified-CRAs>) a list of credit rating agencies registered in accordance with the CRA Regulation. That list is updated within five working days following the adoption of a decision under Article 16, 17 or 20 CRA Regulation. The European Commission shall publish that updated list in the Official Journal of the European Union within 30 days following such update.

[Einzelheiten einfügen, ob die jeweilige Ratingagentur ihren Sitz in der Europäischen Gemeinschaft hat und gemäß Verordnung (EG) Nr. 1060/2009 des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom

³⁵ Not required for Notes with a Specified Denomination of less than EUR 100,000

Nicht erforderlich bei Schuldverschreibungen mit einer festgelegten Stückelung von weniger als EUR 100.000.

³⁶ In case of a fungible issue, need to indicate that the original notes are already admitted to trading. Not required for Notes with a Specified Denomination of at least EUR 100,000.

Im Falle einer Aufstockung, die mit einer vorangegangenen Emission fungibel ist, ist die Angabe erforderlich, dass die ursprünglichen Schuldverschreibungen bereits zum Handel zugelassen sind. Nicht erforderlich bei Schuldverschreibungen mit einer festgelegten Stückelung von mindestens EUR 100.000.

³⁷ Do not complete, if the Notes are not rated on an individual basis. In case of Notes with a Specified Denomination of less than EUR 100,000, need to include a brief explanation of the meaning of the ratings if this has been previously published by the rating provider.

Nicht auszufüllen, wenn kein Einzelrating für die Schuldverschreibungen vorliegt. Bei Schuldverschreibungen mit einer festgelegten Stückelung von weniger als EUR 100.000, kurze Erläuterung der Bedeutung des Ratings wenn dieses vorher von der Ratingagentur erstellt wurde.

16. September 2009 über Ratingagenturen, in der jeweils geltenden Fassung, (die "**Ratingagentur-Verordnung**") registriert ist oder die Registrierung beantragt hat.]

Die Europäische Wertpapier- und Marktaufsichtsbehörde veröffentlicht auf ihrer Webseite (<http://www.esma.europa.eu/page/Listregistered-and-certified-CRAs>) ein Verzeichnis der nach der Ratingagentur-Verordnung registrierten Ratingagenturen. Dieses Verzeichnis wird innerhalb von fünf Werktagen nach Annahme eines Beschlusses gemäß Artikel 16, 17 oder 20 der Ratingagentur-Verordnung aktualisiert. Die Europäische Kommission veröffentlicht das aktualisierte Verzeichnis im Amtsblatt der Europäischen Union innerhalb von 30 Tagen nach der Aktualisierung.

[Listing and Admission to Trading:³⁸

[Börseneinführung und -zulassung:

The above Final Terms comprise the details required for admittance to trading and to list this issue of Notes (as from **[insert Issue Date for the Notes]**) pursuant to the EUR 4,000,000,000 Debt Issuance Programme of Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA.]

Die vorstehenden Endgültigen Bedingungen enthalten die Angaben, die für die Zulassung und Notierungsaufnahme dieser Emission von Schuldverschreibungen (ab dem **[Valutierungstag der Schuldverschreibungen einfügen]**) gemäß dem EUR 4.000.000.000 Debt Issuance Programme der Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA.]

F. Information to be provided regarding the consent by the Issuer or person responsible for drawing up the Prospectus

Zur Verfügung zu stellende Informationen über die Zustimmung des Emittenten oder der für die Erstellung des Prospekts zuständigen Person

Offer period during which subsequent resale or final placement of the Notes by Dealers and/or further financial intermediaries can be made **[Not applicable]** **[Specify details]**
Angebotsfrist, während derer die spätere Weiterveräußerung oder endgültige Platzierung von Wertpapieren durch die Platzeure oder weitere Finanzintermediäre erfolgen kann **[Nicht anwendbar]** **[Einzelheiten einfügen]**

**[THIRD PARTY INFORMATION
INFORMATIONEN VON SEITEN DRITTER**

With respect to any information included herein and specified to be sourced from a third party (i) the Issuer confirms that any such information has been accurately reproduced and as far as the Issuer is aware and is able to ascertain from information available to it from such third party, no facts have been omitted the omission of which would render the reproduced information inaccurate or misleading and (ii) the Issuer has not independently verified any such information and accepts no responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

Hinsichtlich der hierin enthaltenen und als solche gekennzeichneten Informationen von Seiten Dritter gilt Folgendes: (i) Die Emittentin bestätigt, dass diese Informationen zutreffend wiedergegeben worden sind und – soweit es der Emittentin bekannt ist und sie aus den von diesen Dritten zur Verfügung gestellten Informationen ableiten konnte – keine Fakten weggelassen wurden, deren Fehlen die reproduzierten Informationen unzutreffend oder irreführend gestalten würden; (ii) die Emittentin hat diese Informationen nicht selbstständig überprüft und übernimmt keine Verantwortung für ihre Richtigkeit.]

BERTELSMANN SE & Co. KGaA

[Name & title of signatory]

[Name und Titel des Unterzeichnenden]

³⁸ Include only in the version of the Final Terms which is submitted to the relevant stock exchange in the case of Notes to be listed on such stock exchange.

Nur in derjenigen Fassung der Endgültigen Bedingungen einfügen, die der betreffenden Börse, bei der die Schuldverschreibungen zugelassen werden sollen, vorgelegt wird.

USE OF PROCEEDS

Except as disclosed in the relevant Final Terms, as applicable, the net proceeds from each issue of Notes will be used for general corporate purposes.

DESCRIPTION OF RULES REGARDING RESOLUTIONS OF HOLDERS

The Terms and Conditions pertaining to a certain issue of Notes may provide that the Holders may agree to amendments or decide on other matters relating to the Notes by way of resolution to be passed in a meeting (*Gläubigerversammlung*) or by taking votes without a meeting. Any such resolution duly adopted by resolution of the Holders shall be binding on each Holder of the respective issue of Notes, irrespective of whether such Holder took part in the vote and whether such Holder voted in favour of or against such resolution.

In addition to the provisions included in the Terms and Conditions of a particular issue of Notes, the rules regarding resolutions of Holders are substantially set out in a Schedule to the Agency Agreement (as defined in "*Documents incorporated by Reference*" below) in the German language together with an English translation. If the Notes are for their life represented by Global Notes, the Terms and Conditions of such Notes fully refer to the rules pertaining to resolutions of Holders in the form of such Schedule to the Fiscal Agency Agreement. Under the German Act on Debt Securities (*Schuldverschreibungsgesetz – "SchVG"*), these rules are largely mandatory, although they permit in limited circumstances supplementary provisions set out in or incorporated into the Terms and Conditions.

Resolutions of the Holders with respect to the Notes can be passed in a meeting (*Gläubigerversammlung*) in accordance with § 5 et seqq. SchVG or by way of a vote without a meeting pursuant to § 18 and § 9 et seqq. SchVG (*Abstimmung ohne Versammlung*).

The following is a brief summary of some of the statutory rules regarding the convening and conduct of meetings of Holders and the taking of votes without meetings, the passing and publication of resolutions as well as their implementation and challenge before German courts.

Rules regarding Holders' Meetings

Meetings of Holders may be convened by the Issuer or the common representative of the Holders (the "**Holders' Representative**"), if any. Meetings of Holders must be convened if one or more Holders holding 5 per cent. or more of the outstanding Notes so require for specified reasons permitted by statute.

Meetings may be convened not less than 14 days prior to the date of the meeting. The Terms and Conditions may provide that attendance and exercise of voting rights at the meeting may be made subject to prior registration of Holders. The Terms and Conditions will indicate what proof will be required for attendance and voting at the meeting. The place of the meeting in respect of a German issuer is the place of the Issuer's registered office, provided, however, that where the relevant Notes are listed on a stock exchange within the European Union or the European Economic Area, the meeting may be held at the place of such stock exchange.

The convening notice shall be made publicly available together with the agenda of the meeting setting out the proposals for resolution.

Each Holder may be represented by proxy. A quorum exists if Holders' representing by value not less than 50 per cent. of the outstanding Notes. If the quorum is not reached, a second meeting may be called at which no quorum will be required, provided that where a resolution may only be adopted by a qualified majority, a quorum requires the presence of at least 25 per cent. of the aggregate principal amount of outstanding Notes.

All resolutions adopted must be properly published. In the case of Notes represented by one or more Global Notes, resolutions which amend or supplement the Terms and Conditions have to be implemented by supplementing or amending the relevant Global Note(s).

In insolvency proceedings instituted in Germany against an issuer, a Holders' Representative, if appointed, is obliged and exclusively entitled to assert the Holders' rights under the Notes. Any resolutions passed by the Holders are subject to the provisions of the Insolvency Code (*Insolvenzordnung*).

If a resolution constitutes a breach of the statute or the Terms and Conditions, Holders may bring an action to set aside such resolution. Such action must be filed with the competent court within one month following the publication of the resolution.

Specific Rules regarding Votes without Meeting

In the case of resolutions to be passed by Holders without a meeting, the rules applicable to Holders' Meetings apply *mutatis mutandis* to any taking of votes by Holders without a meeting, subject to certain special provisions. The following summarises such special rules.

The voting shall be conducted by the person presiding over the taking of votes. Such person shall be (i) a notary public appointed by the Issuer, (ii) where a Holders' Representative has been appointed, the

Holders' Representative if the vote was solicited by the Holders' Representative, or (iii) a person appointed by the competent court.

The notice soliciting the Holders' votes shall set out the period within which votes may be cast. During such voting period, the Holders may cast their votes to the person presiding over the taking of votes. Such notice shall also set out in detail the conditions to be met for the votes to be valid.

The person presiding over the taking of votes shall ascertain each Holder's entitlement to cast a vote based on evidence provided by such Holder and shall prepare a list of the Holders entitled to vote. If it is established that no quorum exists, the person presiding over the taking of votes may convene a meeting of the Holders. Within one year following the end of the voting period, each Holder participating in the vote may request a copy of the minutes of such vote and any annexes thereto from the Issuer.

Each Holder participating in the vote may object in writing to the result of the vote within two weeks following the publication of the resolutions passed. The objection shall be decided upon by the person presiding over the taking of votes. If he remedies the objection, he shall promptly publish the result. If the person presiding over the taking of votes does not remedy the objection, he shall promptly inform the objecting Holder in writing.

The Issuer shall bear the costs of the vote and, if the court has convened a meeting, also the costs of such proceedings.

TAXATION

The following is a general discussion of certain German, Luxembourg, UK, Irish, Dutch and Austrian tax consequences of the acquisition and ownership of the Notes. This discussion does not purport to be a comprehensive description of all tax considerations which may be relevant to a decision to purchase Notes. In particular, this discussion does not consider any specific facts or circumstances that may apply to a particular purchaser. This summary is based on the laws (including tax treaties) currently in force and as applied on the date of this Prospectus in the Federal Republic of Germany, the Grand Duchy of Luxembourg, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, the Republic of Ireland, The Netherlands and the Republic of Austria currently in force and as applied on the date of this Prospectus which are subject to change, possibly with retroactive or retrospective effect.

PROSPECTIVE PURCHASERS OF NOTES ARE ADVISED TO CONSULT THEIR OWN TAX ADVISORS AS TO THE TAX CONSEQUENCES OF THE PURCHASE, OWNERSHIP AND DISPOSITION OF NOTES INCLUDING THE EFFECT OF ANY STATE OR LOCAL TAXES, UNDER THE TAX LAWS APPLICABLE IN THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY, THE GRAND DUCHY OF LUXEMBOURG, THE UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND NORTHERN IRELAND, THE REPUBLIC OF IRELAND, THE NETHERLANDS AND THE REPUBLIC OF AUSTRIA AND EACH COUNTRY OF WHICH THEY ARE RESIDENTS.

1. Federal Republic of Germany

Income tax

Notes held by tax residents as non-business assets

- Taxation of interest

Payments of interest on the Notes to Holders who are individuals and are tax residents of the Federal Republic of Germany (*i.e.*, persons whose residence or habitual abode is located in the Federal Republic of Germany) are subject to German income tax. In each case where German income tax arises, a solidarity surcharge (*Solidaritatszuschlag*) is levied in addition. Furthermore, church tax may be levied, where applicable. If coupons or interest claims are disposed of separately (*i.e.* without the Notes), the gains from the disposal are subject to income tax. The same applies to gains from the redemption of coupons or interest claims if the Notes are disposed of separately.

On payments of interest on the Notes to individuals who are tax residents of the Federal Republic of Germany, income tax is generally levied as a flat income tax at a rate of 25 per cent. (plus solidarity surcharge in an amount of 5.5 per cent. of such tax, resulting in a total tax charge of 26.375 per cent., plus, if applicable, church tax). The church tax is generally levied by way of withholding unless the Holder has filed a blocking notice (*Sperrvermerk*) with the German Federal Tax Office (*Bundeszentralamt fur Steuern*). The total positive investment income of an individual will be decreased by a lump sum deduction (*Sparer-Pauschbetrag*) of EUR 801 (EUR 1,602 for individuals filing jointly), not by a deduction of expenses actually incurred.

If the Notes are held in custody, or are administered, or if their disposal is executed, by a German branch of a German or non-German credit or financial services institution or with a German securities trading business or a German securities trading bank and such entity credits or pays out of the investment income (the "**Disbursing Agent**"), the flat income tax will be levied by way of withholding at the aforementioned rate from the gross interest payment to be made by the Disbursing Agent.

In general, no withholding tax will be levied if the Holder is an individual (i) whose Notes do not form part of the property of a trade or business and (ii) who filed a withholding exemption certificate (*Freistellungsauftrag*) with the Disbursing Agent but only to the extent the interest income derived from the Notes together with other investment income does not exceed the maximum exemption amount shown on the withholding exemption certificate. Similarly, no withholding tax will be deducted if the Holder has submitted to the Disbursing Agent a certificate of non-assessment (*Nichtveranlagungs-Bescheinigung*) issued by the relevant local tax office.

If no Disbursing Agent (as defined above) is involved in the payment process the Holder will have to include its income on the Notes in its tax return and the tax on its investment income of generally 25 per cent. plus solidarity surcharge and, if applicable, church tax will be collected by way of assessment.

Payment of the flat income tax will generally satisfy any income tax liability (including solidarity surcharge and, if applicable, church tax) of the Holder in respect of such investment income. Holders may apply for a tax assessment on the basis of general rules applicable to them if the resulting income tax burden is lower

than 25 per cent. In this case as well income-related expenses cannot be deducted from the investment income, except for the aforementioned annual lump sum deduction.

- Taxation of capital gains

Also capital gains realised by individual tax residents of the Federal Republic of Germany from the disposal or redemption of the Notes (including gains from the assignment or hidden contribution of the Notes) will be subject to the flat income tax on investment income at a rate of 25 per cent. (plus solidarity surcharge in an amount of 5.5 per cent. of such tax, resulting in a total tax charge of 26.375 per cent., plus, if applicable, church tax), irrespective of any holding period. The separation (e.g. by first-time assignment) of a coupon or interest claim from the Note is treated as a disposal of the Note. Church tax is generally levied by way of withholding unless the Holder has filed a blocking notice with the German Federal Tax Office. This will also apply to Notes on which the principal is effectively repaid in whole or in part although the repayment was not guaranteed.

If the Notes are held in custody, or are administered, or if their disposal is executed, by a Disbursing Agent (as defined above) the flat income tax will be levied by way of withholding from the positive difference between the redemption amount (or the proceeds from the disposal) and the issue price (or the purchase price) of the Notes. If Notes kept or administered in the same custodial account have been acquired at different points in time, the Notes first acquired will be deemed to have been sold first for the purpose of determining the capital gains. If the Notes have been transferred into the custodial account of the Disbursing Agent only after their acquisition, and no evidence on the acquisition data has validly been provided to the new Disbursing Agent by the Disbursing Agent which previously kept the Notes in its custodial account, withholding tax will be levied on 30 per cent. of the proceeds from the disposal or redemption of the Notes.

If no Disbursing Agent is involved in the payment process the Holder will have to include capital gains from the disposal or redemption of the Notes in its tax return and the tax on its investment income of generally 25 per cent. plus solidarity surcharge and, if applicable, church tax will be collected by way of assessment.

Payment of the flat income tax will generally satisfy any income tax liability (including solidarity surcharge and, if applicable, church tax) of the Holder in respect of such investment income. Holders may apply for a tax assessment on the basis of general rules applicable to them if the resulting income tax burden is lower than 25 per cent. Further, if the withholding tax on a disposal or redemption has been calculated from 30 per cent. of the respective proceeds (rather than from the actual gain), a Holder who is an individual tax resident may and in case the actual gain is higher than 30 per cent. of the respective proceeds must also apply for an assessment on the basis of his or her actual acquisition costs. In this case as well income-related expenses cannot be deducted from the investment income, except for the aforementioned annual lump sum deduction.

Any capital loss incurred from the disposal or redemption of the Notes can only be offset against positive income from capital investments. The Disbursing Agent will offset the losses with positive income from capital investments entered into through or with the same Disbursing Agent and carry forward any losses that cannot be offset to the following calendar year. If losses cannot be offset in full against positive investment income by the Disbursing Agent, the Holder can, instead, request that the Disbursing Agent issues a certificate stating the losses in order for them to be offset against other positive income from capital investments or carried forward in the assessment procedure. The request must reach the Disbursing Agent by December 15 of the current year and is irrevocable.

Pursuant to administrative guidance, a disposal shall be disregarded where the transaction costs exceed the proceeds from the disposal, which means that losses suffered from such "disposal" shall not be tax-deductible.

Notes held by tax residents as business assets

Payments of interest on Notes and capital gains from the disposal or redemption of Notes held as business assets by German tax resident individuals or tax resident corporations (i.e., corporations whose legal domicile or place of effective management is located in the Federal Republic of Germany, including via a partnership, as the case may be), are generally subject to German income tax or corporate income tax (in each case plus solidarity surcharge and, if applicable, church tax). The interest and capital gain will also be subject to trade tax if the Notes form part of the property of a German trade or business.

If the Notes are held in custody, or are administered, or if their disposal is executed, by a Disbursing Agent (as defined above), tax at a rate of 25 per cent. (plus a solidarity surcharge of 5.5 per cent. of such tax and, if applicable, church tax) will also be withheld from interest payments on Notes and generally also from capital gains from the disposal or redemption of Notes held as business assets. In these cases the withholding tax does not satisfy the income tax liability of the Holder, as in the case of the flat income tax,

but will be credited as advance payment against the personal income or corporate income tax liability and the solidarity surcharge (and, if applicable, against the church tax) of the Holder.

With regard to capital gains from the disposal or redemption of Notes no withholding will generally be required in the case of Notes held by corporations resident in Germany, provided that in the case of corporations of certain legal forms the status of corporation has been evidenced by a certificate of the competent tax office. The same applies upon notification by use of the officially prescribed form towards the Disbursing Agent in the case of Notes held by individuals or partnerships as business assets.

Notes held by non-residents

Payments of interest on Notes and capital gains from the disposal or redemption of Notes are not subject to German taxation in the case of non-residents, *i.e.* persons having neither their residence nor their habitual abode nor legal domicile nor place of effective management in the Federal Republic of Germany, unless the Notes form part of the business property of a permanent establishment maintained in the Federal Republic of Germany, or for which a permanent representative has been appointed in the Federal Republic of Germany. Interest may, however, also be subject to German income tax if it otherwise constitutes income taxable in Germany, such as income from the letting and leasing of certain German-situs property or income from certain capital investments directly or indirectly secured by German situs real estate.

Non-residents of the Federal Republic of Germany are in general exempt from German withholding tax on interest and capital gains and from solidarity surcharge thereon. However, if the interest or capital gain is subject to German taxation as set forth in the preceding paragraph and the Notes are held in custody, or are administered, or if their disposal is executed, by a Disbursing Agent (as defined above), withholding tax will be levied as explained above at "*Notes held by tax residents as business assets*" or at "*Notes held by tax residents as private assets*", respectively.

Particularities of Notes with a negative yield

Holders will only realise a taxable capital gain if they receive, upon a disposal of the Notes, an amount in excess of the issue price (or the purchase price they paid for the Notes).

Contrary thereto, Holders who subscribe the Notes at the issue price and hold the Notes until their final maturity will realise a loss if the issue price is higher than the redemption price. The tax treatment of such losses is not entirely clear:

If the Notes are held by tax residents as non-business assets, statements of the German tax authorities regarding "negative interest" incurred on bank deposits made by private investors arguably imply that such losses cannot be fully deducted. Such losses are rather treated as expenses in connection with capital investment income and, are, consequently not tax-deductible except for an annual lump-sum deduction (*Sparer-Pauschbetrag*) of EUR 801 (EUR 1,602 for individuals filing jointly).

If the Notes are held by tax residents as business assets, recently published statements of the German tax authorities regarding "negative interest" incurred on bank deposits made by business investors arguably imply that such losses are generally tax deductible.

Inheritance and Gift Tax

No inheritance or gift taxes with respect to any Note will generally arise under the laws of the Federal Republic of Germany, if, in the case of inheritance tax, neither the decedent nor the beneficiary, or, in the case of gift tax, neither the donor nor the donee, is a tax resident of the Federal Republic of Germany and such Note is not attributable to a German trade or business for which a permanent establishment is maintained, or a permanent representative has been appointed, in the Federal Republic of Germany. Exceptions from this rule apply to certain German citizens who previously maintained a residence in the Federal Republic of Germany.

Other Taxes

No stamp, issue, registration or similar taxes or duties will be payable in the Federal Republic of Germany in connection with the issuance, delivery or execution of the Notes. Currently, net assets tax (*Vermögensteuer*) is not levied in the Federal Republic of Germany.

2. Grand Duchy of Luxembourg

Non-Residents

Under the existing laws of Luxembourg there is no withholding tax on the payment of interest on, or reimbursement of principal of, the Notes made to non-residents of Luxembourg through a paying agent established in Luxembourg.

However, the exchange of information rules and requirements provided for by the Luxembourg law of 18 December 2015 on the automatic exchange of financial account information in the field of taxation apply.

Residents

According to the law of 23 December 2005, as amended, interest on Notes paid by a Luxembourg paying agent or paying agents established in the EU or in the EEA to an individual Holder of Notes who is a resident of Luxembourg will be subject to a withholding tax of 20 per cent. In case of payment through a paying agent established in the EU or in the EEA, the Luxembourg resident individual Holder of Notes must under a specific procedure remit 20 per cent. tax to the Luxembourg Treasury.

If the individual Holder holds the Notes in the course of the management of his or her private wealth, the aforementioned 20 per cent. withholding tax will operate a full discharge of income tax due on such payments.

Interest on Notes paid by a Luxembourg paying agent to a resident Holder of Notes who is not an individual is not subject to withholding tax.

When used in the preceding paragraphs "*interest*" and "*paying agent*" have the meaning given thereto in the Luxembourg law of 23 December 2005, as amended. "*Interest*" will include accrued or capitalised interest at the sale, repayment or redemption of the Notes. Payments of interest or similar income under the Notes to Clearstream Banking AG, Clearstream Banking, société anonyme and Euroclear Bank SA/NV and payments by or on behalf of Clearstream Banking, société anonyme to financial intermediaries will not give rise to a withholding tax under Luxembourg law.

3. The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

The comments below, which are of a general nature and are based on the Issuer's understanding of current United Kingdom law and H.M. Revenue & Customs practice, describe only the United Kingdom withholding tax treatment of payments in respect of the Notes. They are not exhaustive. They do not deal with any other United Kingdom taxation implications of acquiring, holding or disposing of the Notes. Prospective holders of Notes who are in any doubt as to their tax position or who may be subject to tax in a jurisdiction other than the United Kingdom are strongly advised to consult their own professional advisers.

Withholding tax

So long as the Notes are and continue to be admitted to trading on the Regulated Market of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange and listed on the official list of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange, payment of interest on the Notes may be made without withholding or deduction for or on account of income tax.

Interest on the Notes may also be paid without withholding or deduction for or on account of tax where at the time the payment is made, the Issuer reasonably believes (and any person by or through whom interest on the Notes is paid reasonably believes) that the beneficial owner of the interest is within the charge to United Kingdom corporation tax as regards the payment of interest, provided H.M. Revenue & Customs has not given a direction that the interest should be paid under deduction of tax.

In other cases, absent any other relief or exemption (such as a direction by H.M. Revenue & Customs that interest may be paid without withholding or deduction for or on account of tax to a specified Holder following an application by that Holder under an applicable double tax treaty), an amount must generally be withheld on account of income tax at the basic rate (currently 20 per cent.) from payments of interest on the Notes.

Where Notes are issued on terms that a premium is or may be payable on redemption, as opposed to being issued at a discount, then it is possible that any such element of premium may constitute a payment of interest and be subject to withholding on account of income tax as outlined in the preceding paragraphs.

Where Notes are issued at an issue price of less than 100 per cent. of their principal amount, any payments in respect of the accrued discount element on any such Notes will not be made subject to any

withholding or deduction for or on account of income tax as long as they do not constitute payments in respect of interest.

Where interest has been paid under deduction of income tax, Holders who are not resident in the United Kingdom may be able to recover all or part of the tax deducted under an appropriate provision of an applicable double taxation treaty.

4. Republic of Ireland

*The following is a summary based on the laws and practices currently in force in Ireland regarding the tax position of investors beneficially owning their notes and should be treated with appropriate caution. Particular rules may apply to certain classes of taxpayers holding notes. The summary does not constitute tax or legal advice and the comments below are of a general nature only. **This summary only relates to the potential application of Irish withholding taxes to payments made under the Notes.** It does not deal with any other matters and in particular does not describe the taxation consequences for Irish resident or ordinarily resident Holders in respect of the purchase, holding, redemption or sale of the notes and the receipt of interest thereon. The comments are made on the assumption that the Issuers are not resident in Ireland for Irish tax purposes and do not carry on a trade in Ireland through a branch or agency. Prospective investors in the notes should consult their professional advisors on the tax implications of the purchase, holding, redemption or sale of the Notes and the receipt of interest thereon under the laws of their country of residence, citizenship or domicile.*

Irish Withholding Tax

Under Irish tax law there is no obligation on the Issuer to operate any withholding tax on payments of interest on the Notes except where the interest has an Irish source and is annual in nature. The interest could be considered to have an Irish source, where, for example, interest is paid out of funds maintained in Ireland or where the Notes are secured on Irish situate assets. The mere offering of the Notes to Irish investors will not cause the interest to have an Irish source.

In certain circumstances, collection agents and other persons receiving interest on the Notes in Ireland on behalf of a Holder, will be obliged to operate a withholding tax.

Provision of Information

Holders should be aware that where any interest or other payment on Notes is paid to them by or through an Irish paying agent or collection agent then the relevant person may be required to supply the Irish Revenue Commissioners with details of the payment and certain details relating to the Holder. Where the Holder is not Irish resident, the details provided to the Irish Revenue Commissioners may, in certain cases, be passed by them to the tax authorities of the jurisdiction in which the Holder is resident for taxation purposes.

5. The Netherlands

General

The following is a general summary of certain Netherlands withholding tax consequences of the acquisition and holding of the Notes. This summary does not purport to describe all possible tax considerations or consequences that may be relevant to a Holder or prospective Holder of Notes and does not purport to deal with the tax consequences applicable to all categories of investors, some of which (such as trusts or similar arrangements) may be subject to special rules. In view of its general nature, it should be treated with corresponding caution. Holders or prospective Holders of Notes should consult with their tax advisers with regard to the tax consequences of investing in the Notes in their particular circumstances. The discussion below is included for general information purposes only.

Except as otherwise indicated, this summary only addresses Netherlands national tax legislation published regulations thereunder and published authoritative case law, all as in effect on the date hereof, and all of which are subject to change or to different interpretation, possibly with retroactive effect. Where the summary refers to the Netherlands it refers only to the part of the Kingdom of the Netherlands located in Europe.

Withholding tax

All payments of principal and/or interest made by the Issuer under the Notes may be made free of withholding or deduction of, for or on account of any taxes of whatever nature imposed, levied, withheld or assessed by the Netherlands or any political subdivision or taxing authority thereof or therein.

6. Republic of Austria

Income tax

Austrian Resident Taxpayers

Individuals having a domicile or their habitual abode in Austria or corporations having their corporate seat or their place of management in Austria are considered residents for Austrian income and corporate income tax law purposes, respectively.

Individual residents

- Notes held as private assets

Generally income arising with respect to the Notes in the form of either

- (i) fixed or floating interest payments (*Zinserträge*) or
- (ii) realised capital gains (*Einkünfte aus realisierten Wertsteigerungen*)

qualifies as "investment income" (*Einkünfte aus Kapitalvermögen*) and, as such, is taxed under a special regime at a flat rate of 27.5 per cent. if the Notes are publicly offered. Realised capital gains are the difference between (a) the amount realised (e.g., the sale proceeds, the redemption or other pay-off amount, or the fair market value in case of a deemed realisation) and (b) the acquisition costs; in each case including accrued interest, if any.

For Notes held as private assets, the acquisition costs shall not include ancillary acquisition costs (*Anschaftungsnebenkosten*). An average price is determined regarding Notes not acquired at the same time, but held in the same securities account and having the same securities identification number. Expenses and costs (*Aufwendungen und Ausgaben*) that are directly connected with investment income are not tax effective.

If an Austrian custodian (*inländische depotführende Stelle*) or an Austrian paying agent (*auszahlende Stelle*) is involved in paying investment income (interest or capital gains), 27.5 per cent. withholding tax is imposed. The Austrian custodian or paying agent has the responsibility to deduct and pay the withholding tax to the respective tax office.

If no withholding tax is imposed (e.g., because the Notes are held through a foreign paying agent), the investment income arising from the Notes generally has to be included in the investor's annual income tax return in accordance with the Austrian Income Tax Act and will be subject to the special flat tax rate of 27.5 per cent.

The 27.5 per cent. taxation generally results in a final taxation (*Endbesteuerung*) for income tax, both in case of the imposition of a withholding tax and in case of a tax assessment, *i.e.*, the flat income tax will generally satisfy the income tax liability on the investment income; an option to assess the income at the progressive income tax rate exists (in particular for investors whose regular personal income tax rate is lower than 27.5 per cent.).

Income from Notes which are not legally or factually offered to an indefinite number of persons within the meaning of the Austrian Income Tax Act would not be subject to withholding tax and final taxation but subject to normal progressive personal income tax rates of up to 50 per cent. (for income above EUR 90,000 *per annum* and up to EUR 1 million *per annum*) and 55 per cent. (as far as the income exceeds EUR 1 million *per annum*).

Capital gains are not only taxed upon an actual disposition or redemption of the Notes, but also upon a deemed realisation.

- A deemed realisation takes place due to a restriction of the Austrian taxing right on the Notes (e.g. move abroad, donation to a non-resident, etc.). If the Notes are held in an Austrian securities account, the Austrian withholding agent (custodian or paying agent) has to impose the withholding tax and such withholding tax needs to be deducted only upon an actual disposition of the Notes or withdrawal from the account. If the Holder has timely notified the Austrian withholding agent of the restriction of the Austrian taxing right on the Notes (e.g. his or her relocation to another country), not more than the value increase of the Notes until such notification is subject to Austrian withholding tax. An exemption of withholding tax applies in case of a notified moving to another Member State of the European Economic Area if the Holder presents to the Austrian withholding agent a tax assessment notice of the year of migration in which the option for a deferral of tax has been exercised.

- A deemed realisation also takes place upon withdrawals (*Entnahmen*) from an Austrian securities account and other transfers of Notes from one Austrian securities account to another one. Exemptions apply in this case for a transfer of the Notes to another deposit account, if certain information procedures are fulfilled and no restriction of the Austrian taxing right occurs (e.g., no donation to a non-resident).

Losses from Notes held as private assets may only be offset with other investment income subject to the flat tax rate (excluding, *inter alia*, interest income from bank deposits and other claims against banks) and must not be offset with any other income. Mandatory loss-offsetting rules to be handled by Austrian custodians apply. A carry-forward of losses is not possible in this context.

- Notes held as business assets

Generally, the same rules as described under the previous heading apply regarding Notes that are held as business assets by tax residents who are individuals. The most important differences are the following (which are, apart from the last bullet point, only relevant for the assessment of the investor):

- Realised capital gains, contrary to interest income, have to be included in the investor's annual income tax return, since despite a 27.5 per cent. withholding taxation that is also imposed in the context of Notes held as business assets if an Austrian custodian is involved, no final taxation for income tax applies. It is nevertheless subject to the special income tax rate of 27.5 per cent.; however, this only applies to income from realised capital gains if the realisation of such income is not a core activity of the business.
- Write-downs and realised losses derived from the sale or redemption of the Notes held as business assets may be offset with positive income from realised capital gains that are investment income in the first place; 55 per cent. of the remaining losses may be offset against other income or carried forward.
- The acquisition costs of Notes held as business assets may also include ancillary costs incurred upon the acquisition.
- Loss off-setting is not made by the custodian, but can only be made in the assessment of the individual.

It is noted that expenses and costs (*Aufwendungen und Ausgaben*) directly connected with investment income are also not tax effective if the Notes are held as business assets.

- Corporate residents

Corporate investors deriving business income from the Notes may avoid the application of withholding tax by filing a declaration of exemption (*Befreiungserklärung*) with the Austrian withholding tax agent, who must forward a copy thereof to the tax office. Income derived from the Notes by corporate investors (including any capital gains) is subject to corporate income tax at the general corporate income tax rate of 25 per cent. Any Austrian withholding tax levied is credited as prepayment against the Austrian corporate income tax amount in the tax assessment of the corporate investor.

A special tax regime applies for private foundations (*Privatstiftungen*).

Notes held by non-residents

Non-resident investors, i.e., individuals who have neither a domicile nor their habitual abode in Austria and corporations that have neither their corporate seat nor their place of management in Austria ("*non-residents*") are not taxable in Austria with regard to their income from the Notes, provided the income is not attributable to a permanent establishment of the investor in Austria.

Since 1 January 2017 the taxation of interest income from the Notes was extended to all non-resident individuals (with the exception of persons resident in a country which takes part in the automatic information exchange). However, no such taxation of interest income applies to the Notes at hand in the case of non-resident investors, if the issuer – being not a bank – has neither its seat nor its place of management in Austria and under the condition that the issuer does not have a branch in Austria which is involved in the issuance of the Notes. The exemption of withholding tax requires (among others) a proof of the investor's non-residence (including certificate of residence of the investor). In case of any tax withheld a refund is possible to the non-resident investors upon application which has to be filed with the competent Austrian tax office.

Accrued interest in case of a sale or other disposition of the Notes (including the difference between the sales price and the acquisition cost in case of zero-coupon-bonds) is regarded as interest income subject to non-resident taxation if the debtor of the accrued interest (the acquirer of the Notes) has its seat,

domicile or its place of management in Austria or is the branch of a foreign bank, and the sales transaction, in the course of which the accrued interest is paid, is handled by an Austrian paying agent. No taxation of interest income applies vis-à-vis non-resident corporate investors. No taxation of interest also applies vis-à-vis individuals who are residents in a country, with which Austria agreed on an automatic exchange of information, if an appropriate proof is provided by the investor. The proof must be furnished among others, by means of a certificate of residence issued by the tax authorities of the investor's residence state and further documentation in case of corporations. In case of transparent partnerships the residence status of the partners is decisive. Moreover, tax withheld may be refundable to the non-resident investors upon their application which has to be filed with the competent Austrian tax office under the conditions mentioned or if a double tax treaty relief is available.

If a non-resident individual or corporation receives income from the Notes through an Austrian permanent establishment, they are to a large extent subject to the same tax treatment as resident investors, i.e., both interest income and capital gains received via the permanent establishment are subject to tax and also (in case of an Austrian withholding tax agent) to withholding tax, unless an exemption is applicable (see the description for Austrian resident investors).

Final note on withholding tax imposed in Austria

Assuming that the Issuer does not use a branch or permanent establishment in Austria for the payment of interest under the Notes, the Issuer does not assume any responsibility for Austrian withholding tax (Kapitalertragsteuer) charged in Austria at source and is not obliged to make additional payments in case of withholding tax deductions at source.

7. The proposed Financial Transaction Tax

The European Commission has published a proposal for a Directive for a common Financial Transaction Tax ("**FTT**") in certain participating Member States. The proposed FTT has very broad scope and could apply to certain dealings in financial instruments (including secondary market transactions). The FTT could apply to persons both within and outside of the participating Member States. Generally, it would apply to certain dealings in financial instruments where at least one party is a financial institution, and either (i) at least one party is established or deemed to be established in a participating Member State or (ii) the financial instruments are issued in a participating Member State. However, the proposed Directive remains subject to negotiation between the participating Member States. It may therefore be altered prior to any implementation, the timing of which remains unclear. Additional EU Member States may decide to participate. Prospective holders of the Notes are advised to seek their own professional advice in relation to the FTT.

8. U.S. Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act Withholding ("FATCA**")**

Pursuant to certain provisions of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, commonly known as FATCA, a "foreign financial institution" may be required to withhold on certain payments it makes ("**foreign passthru payments**") to persons that fail to meet certain certification, reporting, or related requirements. A number of jurisdictions (including Germany and the Netherlands) have entered into, or have agreed in substance to, intergovernmental agreements with the United States to implement FATCA ("**IGAs**"), which modify the way in which FATCA applies in their jurisdictions. Certain aspects of the application of the FATCA provisions and IGAs to instruments such as the Notes, including whether withholding would ever be required pursuant to FATCA or an IGA with respect to payments on instruments such as the Notes, are uncertain and may be subject to change. Even if withholding would be required pursuant to FATCA or an IGA with respect to payments on instruments such as the Notes, such withholding would not apply prior to 1 January 2019 (intended date) and Notes issued on or prior to the date that is six months after the date on which final regulations defining "foreign passthru payments" are filed with the U.S. Federal Register generally would be "grandfathered" for purposes of FATCA withholding unless materially modified after such date (including by reason of a substitution of the Issuer). However, if additional notes (as described under "*Terms and Conditions—Further Issues, Purchases and Cancellation*") that are not distinguishable from previously issued Notes are issued after the expiration of the grandfathering period and are subject to withholding under FATCA, then withholding agents may treat all Notes, including the Notes offered prior to the expiration of the grandfathering period, as subject to withholding under FATCA. Holders should consult their own tax advisors regarding how these rules may apply to their investment in the Notes. In the event any withholding would be required pursuant to FATCA or an IGA with respect to payments on the Notes, the Issuer will not pay any additional amounts as a result of the withholding.

SELLING RESTRICTIONS

The Dealers have entered into a dealer agreement dated 18 April 2018 (the "**Dealer Agreement**") as a basis upon which they or any of them may from time to time agree to purchase Notes.

The Notes have not been and will not be registered under the Securities Act and may not be offered or sold within the United States except pursuant to an exemption from, or in a transaction not subject to, the registration requirements of the Securities Act.

1. General

Each Dealer has represented and agreed that it will comply with all applicable laws and regulations in force in any jurisdiction in which it purchases, offers, sells or delivers Notes or possesses or distributes the Prospectus and will obtain any consent, approval or permission required by it for the purchase, offer, sale or delivery by it of Notes under the laws and regulations in force in any jurisdiction to which it is subject or in which it makes such purchases, offers, sales or deliveries and neither the Issuer nor any other Dealer shall have any responsibility therefor.

2. United States of America (the "United States")

(a) Each Dealer has acknowledged that the Notes have not been and will not be registered under the Securities Act and may not be offered or sold within the United States except pursuant to an exemption from, or in a transaction not subject to, the registration requirements of the Securities Act. Each Dealer has represented and agreed that it has not offered or sold, and will not offer or sell, any Note constituting part of its allotment within the United States except in accordance with Rule 903 of Regulation S under the Securities Act ("**Regulation S**"). Accordingly, each Dealer further has represented and agreed that neither it, nor its affiliates nor any persons acting on its or their behalf have engaged or will engage in any directed selling efforts with respect to a Note.

(b) From and after the time that the Issuer notifies the Dealers in writing that it is no longer able to make the representation set forth in Clause 4(1)(m)(i) of the Dealer Agreement, each Dealer (i) acknowledges that the Notes have not been and will not be registered under the Securities Act and may not be offered or sold within the United States or to, or for the account or benefit of, U.S. persons except in accordance with Regulation S or pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act; (ii) has represented and agreed that it has not offered and sold any Notes, and will not offer and sell any Notes, (x) as part of its distribution at any time and (y) otherwise until 40 days after the later of the commencement of the offering and closing date, only in accordance with Rule 903 of Regulation S; and accordingly, (iii) has further represented and agreed that neither it, its affiliates nor any persons acting on its or their behalf have engaged or will engage in any directed selling efforts with respect to any Note, and it and they have complied and will comply with the offering restrictions requirements of Regulation S; and (iv) has also agreed that, at or prior to confirmation of any sale of Notes, it will have sent to each distributor, dealer or person receiving a selling concession, fee or other remuneration that purchases Notes from it during the distribution compliance period a confirmation or notice to substantially the following effect:

"The Securities covered hereby have not been registered under the U.S. Securities Act of 1933 (the "**Securities Act**") and may not be offered or sold within the United States or to, or for the account or benefit of, U.S. persons by any person referred to in Rule 903(b)(2)(iii) (i) as part of its distribution at any time or (ii) otherwise until 40 days after the later of the commencement of the offering and the closing date, except in either case in accordance with Regulation S. Terms used above have the meanings given to them by Regulation S."

(c) Each Dealer who has purchased Notes of a Tranche hereunder (or in the case of a sale of a Tranche of Notes issued to or through more than one Dealer, each of such Dealers as to the Notes of such Tranche purchased by or through it or, in the case of a syndicated issue, the relevant Lead Manager) shall determine and notify to the Fiscal Agent the completion of the distribution of the Notes of such Tranche. On the basis of such notification or notifications, the Fiscal Agent agrees to notify such Dealer/Lead Manager of the end of the distribution compliance period with respect to such Tranche.

Terms used in this paragraph 2 have the meanings given to them by Regulation S.

(d) Each Dealer has represented and agreed that it has not entered and will not enter into any contractual arrangement with respect to the distribution or delivery of Notes, except with its affiliates or with the prior written consent of the Issuer.

- (e) Notes will be issued in accordance with the provisions of United States Treasury Regulation § 1.163-5(c)(2)(i)(D) (the "**D Rules**") (or, any successor rules in substantially the same form as D Rules, as applicable, for purposes of Section 4701 of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code) as specified in the applicable Final Terms.

Each Dealer has represented and agreed that:

- (i) except to the extent permitted under the D Rules, (i) it has not offered or sold, and during the restricted period will not offer or sell, Notes to a person who is within the United States or its possessions or to a United States person, and (ii) such Dealer has not delivered and will not deliver within the United States or its possessions Notes that are sold during the restricted period;
- (ii) it has and throughout the restricted period will have in effect procedures reasonably designed to ensure that its employees or agents who are directly engaged in selling Notes are aware that such Notes may not be offered or sold during the restricted period to a person who is within the United States or its possessions or to a United States person, except as permitted by the D Rules;
- (iii) if such Dealer is a United States person, it represents that it is acquiring the Notes for purposes of resale in connection with their original issuance and if such Dealer retains Notes for its own account, it will only do so in accordance with the requirements of the D Rules;
- (iv) with respect to each affiliate that acquires from such Dealer Notes for the purposes of offering or selling such Notes during the restricted period, such Dealer either (x) repeats and confirms the representations and agreements contained in sub-clauses (i), (ii) and (iii) on such affiliate's behalf or (y) agrees that it will obtain from such affiliate for the benefit of the Issuer the representations and agreements contained in sub-clauses (i), (ii) and (iii).

Terms used in this paragraph (e) have the meanings given to them by the U.S. Internal Revenue Code and regulations thereunder, including the D Rules.

In addition, each Dealer has represented and agreed that it has not entered and will not enter into any contractual arrangement with any distributor (as that term is defined for purposes of Regulation S and the D Rules) with respect to the distribution of the Notes, except with its affiliates or with the prior written consent of the Issuer.

3. European Economic Area

Unless the Final Terms in respect of any Notes specify the "*Prohibition of Sales to EEA Retail Investors*" as "*Not Applicable*", each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each further Dealer appointed under the Programme will be required to represent and agree, that it has not offered, sold or otherwise made available and will not offer, sell or otherwise make available any Notes which are the subject of the offering contemplated by the Prospectus as completed by the Final Terms in relation thereto to any retail investor in the European Economic Area. For the purposes of this provision:

(a) the expression "**retail investor**" means a person who is one (or more) of the following:

- (i) a retail client as defined in point (11) of Article 4(1) of Directive 2014/65/EU (as amended, "**MiFID II**"); or
- (ii) a customer within the meaning of Directive 2002/92/EC (as amended, the "**Insurance Mediation Directive**"), where that customer would not qualify as a professional client as defined in point (10) of Article 4(1) of MiFID II; or
- (iii) not a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive; and

(b) the expression an "**offer**" includes the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the Notes to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe the Notes.

If the Final Terms in respect of any Notes specify "*Prohibition of Sales to EEA Retail Investors*" as "*Not Applicable*", each Dealer has represented and agreed, and each further Dealer appointed under the Programme will be required to represent and agree, in relation to each Member State of the European Economic Area which has implemented the Prospectus Directive (each, a "**Relevant Member State**"), that with effect from and including the date on which the Prospectus Directive is implemented in that Relevant Member State (the "**Relevant Implementation Date**") it has not made and will not make an offer of Notes which are the subject of the offering contemplated by this Prospectus as completed by the Final Terms in relation thereto to the public in that Relevant Member State except that it may, with effect from and

including the Relevant Implementation Date, make an offer of such Notes to the public in that Relevant Member State:

- (a) if the Final Terms in relation to the Notes specify that an offer of those Notes may be made other than pursuant to Article 3 (2) of the Prospectus Directive in that Relevant Member State (a "**Non-exempt Offer**"), following the date of publication of a prospectus in relation to such Notes which has been approved by the competent authority in that Relevant Member State or, where appropriate, approved in another Relevant Member State and notified to the competent authority in that Relevant Member State, provided that any such prospectus has subsequently been completed by the Final Terms contemplating such Non-exempt Offer, in accordance with the Prospectus Directive, in the period beginning and ending on the dates specified in such prospectus or Final Terms, as applicable and the Issuer has consented in writing to its use for the purpose of that Non-exempt Offer;
- (b) at any time to any legal entity which is a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive;
- (c) at any time to fewer than 150, natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined in the Prospectus Directive), subject to obtaining the prior consent of the relevant Dealer or Dealers nominated by the Issuer for any such offer; or
- (d) at any time in any other circumstances falling within Article 3 (2) of the Prospectus Directive,

provided that no such offer of Notes referred to in (b) to (d) above shall require the Issuer or any Dealer to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive, or supplement a prospectus pursuant to Article 16 of the Prospectus Directive.

For the purposes of this provision, the expression an "**offer of Notes to the public**" in relation to any Notes in any Relevant Member State means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the Notes to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe the Notes, as the same may be varied in that Member State by any measure implementing the Prospectus Directive in that Member State and the expression "**Prospectus Directive**" means Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended, including by Directive 2010/73/EU), and includes the relevant implementing measure in the Relevant Member State.

4. United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland ("United Kingdom")

Each Dealer has represented and agreed, that and each further Dealer appointed under the Programme will be required to represent and agree, that:

- (i) it has only communicated or caused to be communicated and will only communicate or cause to be communicated any invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity (within the meaning of section 21 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, as amended ("**FSMA**")) received by it in connection with the issue or sale of any Notes in circumstances in which section 21(1) of the FSMA does not apply to the Issuer; and
- (ii) it has complied and will comply with all applicable provisions of the FSMA with respect to anything done by it in relation to such Notes in, from or otherwise involving the United Kingdom.

5. Japan

Each Dealer has represented and agreed that the Notes have not been and will not be registered under the Financial Instrument and Exchange Act of Japan (Law No. 25 of 1948, as amended) (the "**Financial Instrument and Exchange Act**"). Each Dealer represents and agrees that it will not offer or sell any Notes, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to, or for the benefit of, any resident of Japan (which term as used herein means any person resident in Japan, including any corporation or other entity organised under the laws of Japan), or to others for re-offering or resale, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to a resident of Japan except only pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of, and otherwise in compliance with the Financial Instrument and Exchange Act and any applicable laws, regulations and guidelines of Japan.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Application has been made to the *Commission de Surveillance du Secteur Financier* which is the Luxembourg competent authority for the purpose of the Prospectus Directive for its approval of this Prospectus.

Interests of Natural and Legal Persons involved in the Issue/Offer

Except as discussed in the relevant Final Terms, certain of the Dealers and their affiliates may be customers of, borrowers from or creditors of Bertelsmann and its affiliates. In addition, certain Dealers and their affiliates have engaged, and may in the future engage, in investment banking and/or commercial banking transactions with, and may perform services for Bertelsmann and its affiliates in the ordinary course of business. In particular, in the ordinary course of their business activities, the Dealers and their affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (including bank loans) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers. Such investments and securities activities may involve securities and/or instruments of Bertelsmann or Bertelsmann's affiliates. Certain of the Dealers or their affiliates that have a lending relationship with Bertelsmann routinely hedge their credit exposure to Bertelsmann consistent with their customary risk management policies. Typically, such Dealers and their affiliates would hedge such exposure by entering into transactions which consist of either the purchase of credit default swaps or the creation of short positions in securities, including potentially the Notes issued under the Programme. Any such positions could adversely affect future trading prices of Notes issued under the Programme. The Dealers and their affiliates may also make investment recommendations and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such securities or financial instruments and may hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long and/or short positions in such securities and instruments.

Authorisation

The setup of this programme complies with the articles of association of Bertelsmann and with its internal rules of procedure. No further board resolutions are required.

Listing and Admission to Trading

Application has been made to the Luxembourg Stock Exchange for Notes issued under this Prospectus to be admitted to trading on the Regulated Market of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange and to be listed on the official list of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange.

Clearing Systems

The Notes have been accepted for clearance through Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt am Main ("CBF"), Clearstream Banking société anonyme, Luxembourg ("CBL") and Euroclear Bank SA/NV ("Euroclear"). The appropriate German securities number ("WKN") (if any), Common Code and ISIN for each Tranche of Notes allocated by CBF, CBL and Euroclear will be specified in the applicable Final Terms.

Documents on Display

So long as Notes are capable of being issued under the Programme, copies of the following documents will, when published, be available free of charge during normal business hours from the registered office of the Issuer and from the specified offices of the Fiscal Agent for the time being in Frankfurt am Main:

- (i) the constitutional documents (with an English translation where applicable) of the Issuer;
- (ii) the audited consolidated group annual financial statements of Bertelsmann in respect of the financial years ended 2016 and 2017, respectively, in each case including the auditor's report thereon;
- (iii) List of shareholdings according to § 313 German Commercial Code (*Handelsgesetzbuch – HGB*) as per 31 December 2017;
- (iv) a copy of this Prospectus;
- (v) any supplements to this Prospectus;
- (vi) Schedule 5 of the Amended and Restated Fiscal Agency Agreement dated 18 April 2018 between Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA and Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft acting as Fiscal Agent and Paying Agent (the "**Agency Agreement**").

In the case of Notes listed on the official list of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange and admitted to trading on the regulated market of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange or publicly offered in the Grand Duchy of Luxembourg, the Final Terms will be displayed on the website of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange (www.bourse.lu). In the case of Notes listed on any other stock exchange or publicly offered in one or more member states of the European Economic Area other than the Grand Duchy of Luxembourg, the Final Terms will be displayed on the website of Bertelsmann Group (<http://www.bertelsmann.com/investor-relations/bonds/debt-issuance-programme/>).

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

Documents incorporated by Reference

The following documents which have been published (English version) or which are published simultaneously with this Prospectus and filed with the Commission shall be incorporated by reference into, and form part of, this Prospectus:

- (a) the published audited consolidated group annual financial statements of Bertelsmann dated 31 December 2016 and 31 December 2017, in each case including the auditor's report thereon;
- (b) Section "Boards/Mandates" of the published audited consolidated group annual financial statements of Bertelsmann of Bertelsmann; and
- (c) Schedule 5 of the Amended and Restated Fiscal Agency Agreement dated 18 April 2018 (the "**Agency Agreement**") Bertelsmann SE & CO. KGaA and Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft acting as Fiscal Agent and Paying Agent containing primarily the procedural provisions regarding resolutions of Holders shall be fully applicable to the Terms and Conditions of the Notes ("**Schedule 5 of the Agency Agreement**").

Comparative Table of Documents incorporated by Reference

Page	Section of Prospectus	Document incorporated by reference
44	Bertelsmann Group, Historical Financial Information	Group Financial Statements 2016 of Bertelsmann (p. 41 – p. 123; p. 129 – p. 132) Consolidated Income Statement, (p. 41) Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income, (p. 42) Consolidated Balance Sheet, (p. 43) Consolidated Cash Flow Statement, (p. 44) Consolidated Statement of Changes in Equity, (p. 45) Notes, (p. 46 – p. 123) Auditors' Report, (p. 125)
		Group Financial Statements 2017 of Bertelsmann (p. 45 – p. 127; p. 139 – p. 143) Consolidated Income Statement, (p. 45) Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income, (p. 46) Consolidated Balance Sheet, (p. 47) Consolidated Cash Flow Statement, (p. 48) Consolidated Statement of Changes in Equity, (p. 49) Notes, (p. 50 – p. 127) Independent Auditors' Report, (p. 129 – p. 135)
52/68/ 85/103	Terms and Conditions of the Notes	Schedule 5 of the Agency Agreement
40/43	Administrative, Supervisory Boards and Management	Sections "Supervisory Board/ Executive Board" of the Group Financial Statements 2017 of Bertelsmann (p. 139 – p 143)

Any information incorporated by reference that is not included in the above list, is considered as additional information and is not required by the relevant schedules of the Commission Regulation (EC) 809/2004.

Availability of incorporated Documents

Any document incorporated herein by reference can be obtained without charge at the offices of Bertelsmann as set out at the end of this Prospectus and will also be available on its website www.bertelsmann.com. Additionally, such documents will be available free of charge from the principal office in Luxembourg of Deutsche Bank Luxembourg S.A. (the "**Luxembourg Listing Agent**") for Notes listed on the official list of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange and admitted to trading on the regulated market of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange and will be published on the website of the Luxembourg Stock Exchange (www.bourse.lu).

NAMES AND ADDRESSES

THE ISSUER

Bertelsmann SE & Co. KGaA
Carl-Bertelsmann-Straße 270
33311 Gütersloh
Federal Republic of Germany

FISCAL AGENT

Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft
Taunusanlage 12
60325 Frankfurt am Main
Federal Republic of Germany

LUXEMBOURG LISTING AGENT

Deutsche Bank Luxembourg S.A.
2 Boulevard Konrad Adenauer
1115 Luxembourg
Luxembourg

LEGAL ADVISERS

To the Dealers as to German law

Hengeler Mueller
Partnerschaft von Rechtsanwälten mbB
Bockenheimer Landstraße 24
60323 Frankfurt am Main
Federal Republic of Germany

AUDITORS TO THE ISSUER

**PricewaterhouseCoopers GmbH
Wirtschaftsprüfungsgesellschaft**
Kreuzstraße 35
33602 Bielefeld
Federal Republic of Germany

DEALERS

Barclays Bank PLC
5 The North Colonnade, Canary Wharf
London E14 4BB
United Kingdom

Citigroup Global Markets Limited
Citigroup Centre
Canada Square
Canary Wharf
London E14 5LB
United Kingdom

Deutsche Bank Aktiengesellschaft
Mainzer Landstrasse 11-17
60329 Frankfurt am Main
Federal Republic of Germany

Merrill Lynch International
2 King Edward Street
London EC1A 1HQ
United Kingdom

BNP Paribas
10 Harewood Avenue
London NW1 6AA
United Kingdom

Commerzbank Aktiengesellschaft
Kaiserstraße 16 (Kaiserplatz)
60311 Frankfurt am Main
Federal Republic of Germany

J.P. Morgan Securities plc
25 Bank Street
Canary Wharf
London E14 5JP
United Kingdom

**The Royal Bank of Scotland plc (trading as
NatWest Markets)**
250 Bishopsgate
London EC2M 4AA
United Kingdom

Société Générale
29, Boulevard Haussmann
75009 Paris
France